

www.milnex-sa.co.za

# **ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORT &**

# ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME

# **REPORT FOR:**

THE PROPOSED DIAMONDS ALLUVIAL & DIAMONDS GENERAL MINING RIGHT, COMBINED WITH A WASTE LICENCE APPLICATION OF OKAPI DIAMONDS (PTY) LTD, ON PORTION OF THE REMAINING EXTENT OF PORTION 9 (WOUTER) OF THE FARM LANYON VALE 376; REGISTRATION DIVISION: HAY; NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE.

NAME OF APPLICANT	Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd Milnex CC Environmental Consultants		
PREPARED BY			
TEL NO	(018) 011 1925		
FAX NO	087 231 7021		
POSTAL ADDRESS:	P.O. Box 1086, Schweizer-Reneke, 2780		
PHYSICAL ADDRESS:	4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke, 2780		
<b>REFERENCE NUMBER:</b>	NC30/5/1/2/2/10171MR		

	o <u>f Contents</u> DJECT INFORMATION1
	ORTANT NOTICE
	IRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS
	ECTIVE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS
	PE OF ASSESSMENT AND CONTENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT
	ESSMENT REPORTS
A.	CONTACT PERSON AND CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS
B.	DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY
C.	LOCALITY MAP7
D.	DESCRIPTION OF THE SCOPE OF THE PROPOSED OVERALL ACTIVITY8
E.	POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT
F.	NEED AND DESIRABILITY OF THE PROPOSED ACTIVITIES
G.	A MOTIVATION FOR THE PREFERRED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT
H. PRO	A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE POSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT
i)	Details of the development footprint alternatives considered;
ii)	Details of the Public Participation Process Followed
iii)	Summary of Issues Raised by I&APs
iv)	the environmental attributes associated with the development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;
v)	The impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts— 65
vi)	the methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks;
vii)	positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects; 69
viii	) the possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk;70
ix)	if no alternative development [location] footprints for the activity were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and
x)	a concluding statement indicating the location of the preferred alternative development [location] footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;
I. ASSI	A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS UNDERTAKEN TO IDENTIFY, ESS AND RANK THE IMPACTS THE ACTIVITY AND ASSOCIATED

	CTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE WILL IMPOSE ON THE PREFERRED TION] DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ON THE APPROVED SITE70
	AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT CT AND RISK, INCLUDING—
	SUMMARY OF THE FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS OF ANY ALIST REPORT
L. A	AN ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT WHICH CONTAINS—116
	PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND THE IMPACT GEMENT OUTCOMES FOR INCLUSION IN THE EMPR119
N. F	FINAL PROPOSED ALTERNATIVES
0. A	ASPECTS FOR INCLUSION AS CONDITIONS OF AUTHORISATION120
	DESCRIPTION OF ANY ASSUMPTIONS, UNCERTAINTIES AND GAPS IN /LEDGE
•	REASONED OPINION AS TO WHETHER THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY SHOULD OULD NOT BE AUTHORISED120
	PERIOD FOR WHICH THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION IS RED
	AN UNDERTAKING UNDER OATH OR AFFIRMATION BY THE EAP IN TION TO:
	FINANCIAL PROVISION
	DEVIATIONS FROM THE APPROVED SCOPING REPORT AND PLAN OF (
	ANY SPECIFIC INFORMATION THAT MAY BE REQUIRED BY THE ETENT AUTHORITY; AND123
	COMPLIANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTIONS 24(4)(A) AND (B) OF CT
	RONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT126
A. D	DETAILS OF126
B. D	DESCRIPTION OF THE ASPECTS OF THE ACTIVITY126
C. C	COMPOSITE MAP
OUTCO IMPAC AS IDE	A DESCRIPTION OF THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT [OBJECTIVES] OMES, INCLUDING MANAGEMENT STATEMENTS, IDENTIFYING THE CTS AND RISKS THAT NEED TO BE AVOIDED, MANAGED AND MITIGATED ENTIFIED THROUGH THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT ESS FOR ALL PHASES OF THE DEVELOPMENT INCLUDING—
	A DESCRIPTION AND IDENTIFICATION OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT OMES REQUIRED FOR THE ASPECTS CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH 27
IDENTI [OBJEC	A DESCRIPTION OF PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS, IFYING THE MANNER IN WHICH THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT CTIVES AND] OUTCOMES CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH (D) [AND (E)] BE ACHIEVED, AND MUST, WHERE APPLICABLE, INCLUDE ACTIONS TO —

129

G.	MONITORING OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
H.	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY
I.	RESPONSIBLE PERSONS
J.	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS216
	A PROGRAM FOR REPORTING ON COMPLIANCE, TAKING INTO ACCOUNT REQUIREMENTS AS BY THE REGULATIONS;
L.	AN ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN DESCRIBING THE MANNER IN WHICH—
M.	SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY 218

# PROJECT INFORMATION

Project Name:	Application for an Environmental Authorisation for the proposed Mining Right of Diamonds Alluvial (DA) & Diamonds General (D) combined with a Waste Licence Application on a portion of the remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376; Registration Division: Hay; Northern Cape Province		
<b>Report Title:</b>	EIR & EMPr		
<b>Prepared By:</b>	Milnex CC Environmental Consultants		
Date:	April 2020		

	<b>Report Author:</b>	<b>Report Reviewer:</b>
Name:	Ms. Percy Sehaole EAPASA (2019/959) Pr. Sci. Nat.	N/A
Signature:	Rehaole.	

Copyright Milnex CC: All Rights Reserved.

This document contains information proprietary to Milnex CC and as such should be treated as confidential unless specifically identified as a public document by law. Milnex CC owns all copyright and all other intellectual property rights in this report. The document may not be copied, reproduced in whole or in part, or used for any manner without prior written consent from Milnex CC. Copyright is specifically reserved in terms of the Copyright Act 98 of 1987 including amendments thereto. By viewing this disclaimer and by accepting this document, you acknowledge that you have read and accepted these Terms of Use and undertake to keep the information contained herein confidential and not to do any act or allow any act which is in breach of these Terms of Use.

#### The DEA screening tool was used in compiling this document

## **IMPORTANT NOTICE**

In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002 as amended), the Minister must grant a prospecting or mining right if among others the mining "will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment".

Unless an Environmental Authorisation can be granted following the evaluation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and an Environmental Management Programme report in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA), it cannot be concluded that the said activities will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment.

In terms of section 16(3)(b) of the EIA Regulations, 2014, any report submitted as part of an application must be prepared in a format that may be determined by the Competent Authority and in terms of section 17 (1) (c) the competent Authority must check whether the application has taken into account any minimum requirements applicable or instructions or guidance provided by the competent authority to the submission of applications.

**It is therefore an instruction that** the prescribed reports required in respect of applications for an environmental authorisation for listed activities triggered by an application for a right or permit are submitted in the exact format of, and provide all the information required in terms of, this template. Furthermore please be advised that failure to submit the information required in the format provided in this template will be regarded as a failure to meet the requirements of the Regulation and will lead to the Environmental Authorisation being refused.

It is furthermore an instruction that the Environmental Assessment Practitioner must process and interpret his/her research and analysis and use the findings thereof to compile the information required herein. (Unprocessed supporting information may be attached as appendices). The EAP must ensure that the information required is placed correctly in the relevant sections of the Report, in the order, and under the provided headings as set out below, and ensure that the report is not cluttered with un-

interpreted information and that it unambiguously represents the interpretation of the applicant.

#### **ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS**

(1) The environmental impact assessment process must be undertaken in line with the approved plan of study for environmental impact assessment.

(2) The environmental impacts, mitigation and closure outcomes as well as the residual risks of the proposed activity must be set out in the environmental impact assessment report.

#### **OBJECTIVE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS**

2. The objective of the environmental impact assessment process is to, through a consultative

process-

(a) determine the policy and legislative context within which the activity is located and document how the proposed activity complies with and responds to the policy and legislative context;

(b) describe the need and desirability of the proposed activity, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location;

(c) identify the location of the development footprint within the preferred site based on an impact and risk assessment process inclusive of cumulative impacts and a ranking process of all the identified development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects of the environment;

(d) determine the--

(i) nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts occurring to inform identified preferred alternatives; and

(ii) degree to which these impacts-

(aa) can be reversed;

(bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources, and

(cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;

(e) identify the most ideal location for the activity within the preferred site based on the lowest level of environmental sensitivity identified during the assessment; (f) identify, assess, and rank the impacts the activity will impose on the preferred

location through the life of the activity;

- (g) identify suitable measures to avoid, manage or mitigate identified impacts; and
- (h) identify residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.

# SCOPE OF ASSESSMENT AND CONTENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORTS

- A. CONTACT PERSON AND CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS
- a) Details of:
  - i) The EAP who prepared the report
  - ii) Expertise of the EAP

Name of Practitioner	Qualifications	Contact details
Ms. Percy Sehaole Pr.	Master's Degree in	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925
Sci. Nat. EAPASA	Environmental Science Fax No.: (053) 963 2009	
(2019/959)		e-mail address: percy@milnex-
	Master's Degree in	<u>sa.co.za</u>
	Environmental Management	
	(refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	
		Tel No.: (018) 011 1925
	Honours Degree in	Fax No.: (053) 963 2009
Lizanne Esterhuizen	Environmental Science (refer	e-mail address: <u>lizanne@milnex-</u>
	to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	<u>sa.co.za</u>
Danie Labuschagne	Master's Degree in	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925
	Environmental Management	Fax No. : (053) 963 2009
	and Geography (refer to	
	Appendix 1)	

# Summary of the EAP's past experience. (Attach the EAP's curriculum vitae as Appendix 2)

Milnex CC was contracted by **Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** as the independent environmental consultant to undertake the Scoping and EIA process for a Mining Right of Diamonds Alluvial (DA) & Diamonds General (D) combined with a Waste Licence Application on a portion of the remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376; Registration Division: Hay; Northern Cape Province. Milnex CC does not have any interest in secondary developments that may arise out of the authorisation of the proposed project.

Milnex CC is a specialist environmental consultancy with extensive experience in the mining industry which provides a holostic encironmental management service, including environmental assessment and planning to ensure compliance with relevant environmental legislation. Milnex CC benefits from the pooled resources, diverse skills and experience in the environmental and mining field held by its team that has been actively involved in undertaking environmental studies for a wide variety of mining related projects throughout South Africa. The Milnex CC team has considerable

expierence in environmental impact assessment and environmental management, esprcially in the mining industry.

Percy Sehaole & Lizanne Esterhuizen have experience consulting in the environmental field. Their key focus is on environmental assessment, advice and management and ensuring compliance to legislation and guidelines. They are currently involved in undertaking EIAs for several projects across the country (refer to **Appendix 2** for CV).

# **B. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY**

Farm Name:	<ol> <li>A portion of the remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376</li> </ol>	
Application area (Ha)	2180.2624 hectares	
Magisterial district:	Pixley Ka Seme	
Local Municipality	Siyathemba Local Municipality	
Registration Division	Hay	
Distance and direction from	<b>n</b> The area applied for is located along the North Bank of the	
nearest town	middle Orange River between Douglas and Prieska in the	
	Northern Cape Province of South Africa, some 100km	
	southwest of Douglas and some 200km from Kimberley.	
21 digit Surveyor General Code for	1. C031000000037600000	
each farm portion		
Minerals Applied For:	1. Diamonds Alluvial (DA)	
	2. Diamonds General (D)	

# iii. Farm co-ordinates

Farms		Longitude	Latitude
A portion of the remaining extent of portion 9	0	23° 9' 22.378" E	29° 18' 43.764" S
(Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376	1	23° 9' 51.121" E	29° 18' 44.466" S
	2	23° 10' 11.801" E	29° 18' 40.610" S
	3	23° 10' 35.637" E	29° 18' 10.115" S
	4	23° 10' 55.266" E	29° 18' 30.795" S
	5	23° 11' 9.286" E	29° 18' 59.888" S
	6	23° 10' 58.420" E	29° 19' 12.507" S
	7	23° 11' 11.039" E	29° 19' 26.528" S
	8	23° 10' 47.554" E	29° 20' 13.847" S
	9	23° 10' 17.059" E	29° 20' 46.796" S

10 23° 9' 29.739" E 29° 19' 18.816" S

#### C. LOCALITY MAP

(show nearest town, scale not smaller than 1:250000 attached as Appendix 3).

A Locality map is attached in **Appendix 3** and on figure 1 below.

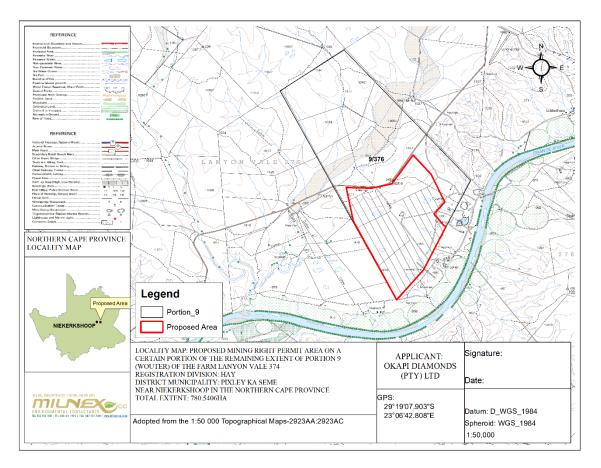


Figure 1: Locality Map

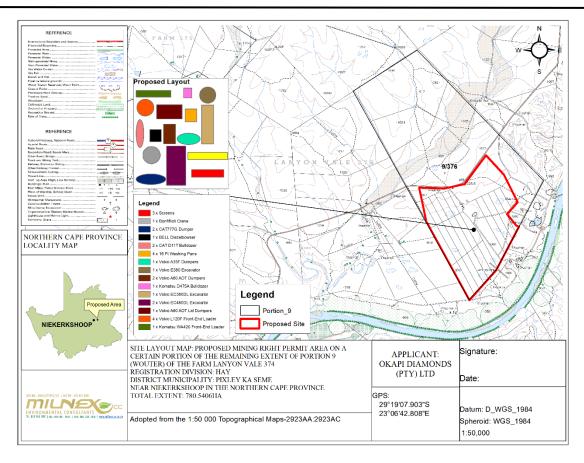


Figure 2: Site Plan

# D. DESCRIPTION OF THE SCOPE OF THE PROPOSED OVERALL ACTIVITY.

# i) LISTED AND SPECIFIED ACTIVITIES

Activity	Description			
Listing Notice GNR	The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous vegetation."			
325, Activity 15.	- Random indigenous vegetation clearance of more than 20 hectares in area			
Listing Notice GNR	The development of a road with a reserve wider than 13.5 metres, or where			
327, Activity 24(ii):	no reserve exists where the road is wider than 8 metres." - The development			
	of 10m wide road, with no road reserve.			
Listing Notice GNR	The development of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the			
327, Activity 9.	bulk transportation of water or storm water—			
	(i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or			
	(ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;			
Listing Notice GNR	The development and related operation of infrastructure exceeding 1 000			
327, Activity 10:	metres in length for the bulk transportation of sewage, effluent, process			
	water, waste water, return water, industrial discharge or slimes			
Listing Notice GNR	The development and related operation of facilities or infrastructure, for the			
327, Activity 14.	storage, or for the storage and handling, of a dangerous good, where such			
	storage occurs in containers with a combined capacity of 80 cubic metres			
	or more but not exceeding 500 cubic metres.			

Listing Notice GNR	The expansion of infrastructure for the bulk transportation of water or						
327, Activity 45.	storm water where the existing infrastructure—						
	i. has an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or						
	ii. has a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more; and						
	(a) where the facility or infrastructure is expanded by more than 1 000 metres in length; or						
	metres in length; or (b) where the throughput capacity of the facility or infrastructure will be						
	(b) where the throughput capacity of the facility or infrastructure will be increased by 10% or more;						
	increased by 10% or more;						
Listing Notice GNR	"Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a						
325, Activity 17:	mining right as contemplated in section 22 of the Mineral and Petroleum						
	Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including - (a)						
	associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to						
	the extraction of a mineral resource; or (b) the primary processing of a						
	mineral resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating,						
	crushing, screening or washing; but excluding the secondary processing of						
	a mineral resource, including the smelting, beneficiation, reduction,						
	refining, calcining or gasification of the mineral resource in which case						
	activity 6 in this Notice applies." – Mining right for the mining of Chrome						
	ore and Platinum Group Metals including associated infrastructure,						
	structure and earthworks						
Listing Notice GNR	"The clearance of an area of 300 square meters or more of indigenous						
324, Activity 12:	vegetation i. Within any critically endangered ecosystem listed in terms of						
	section 52 of the NEMBA. iii. Critical biodiversity areas as identified in						
	systematic biodiversity plans adopted by the competent authority, vi. Areas						
	within a watercourse or wetland, or within 100 metres from the edge of a						
	watercourse or wetland"						
NEM:WA 59 of 2008	The storage of general waste in lagoons.						
Category B: (1).							
NEM:WA 59 of 2008	The treatment of hazardous waste in lagoons, excluding the treatment of						
Category B: (5).	effluent, wastewater or sewage.						
NEM:WA 59 of 2008	The disposal of any quantity of hazardous waste to land.						
Category B: (7).							
NEM:WA 59 of 2008	The disposal of general waste to land covering an area in excess of 200m2						
Category B: (8).	and with a total capacity exceeding 25 000 tons.						
NEM:WA 59 of 2008	The disposal of inert waste to land in excess of 25 000 tons, excluding the						
Category B: (9).	disposal of such waste for the purposes of levelling and building which has						
	been authorised by or under other legislation.						
NEM:WA 59 of 2008	The construction of a facility for a waste management activity listed in						
Category B: (10).	Category B of this Schedule						
NEM:WA 59 of 2008	The establishment or reclamation of a residue stockpile or residue deposit						
Category B: (11).	resulting from activities which require a mining right, exploration right or						
	production right in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources						
	Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002).						

<ul> <li>NAME OF ACTIVITY (All activities including activities not listed)</li> <li>(E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams,</li> <li>Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and</li> <li>boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores,</li> <li>workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms,</li> <li>roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etcetc.)</li> </ul>	Aerial extent of the Activity Ha or m <sup>2</sup>	LISTED ACTIVITY Mark with an X where applicable or affected.	APPLICABLE LISTING NOTICE (GNR 324, GNR 325 or GNR 326)/NOT LISTED
<ul> <li>Clearance of indigenous vegetation:</li> <li>"The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous vegetation." – Random indigenous vegetation clearance of over a 2180.2624 hectares area.</li> <li>Approximately 2180.2624 ha of indigenous vegetation is planned to be removed for the development of the mine.</li> </ul>	2180.2624 Ha Total hectares to be disturbed Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate.	X	Listing Notice GNR 325, Activity 15
The development of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water or storm water— (i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more <b>Pipelines will be established for the mine infrastructure, including</b> <b>for potable water and storm water</b>			Listing Notice GNR 327, Activity 9
The development and related operation of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of sewage, effluent, process water, waste water, return water, industrial discharge or slimes			Listing Notice GNR 327, Activity 10

Various pipelines will be established for the mine infrastructure,	
including for the pumping and transportation of tailings and	
process water.	
The development and related operation of facilities or infrastructure,	
for the storage, or for the storage and handling, of a dangerous good,	
where such storage occurs in containers with a combined capacity of	
80 cubic metres or more but not exceeding 500 cubic metres.	
	Listing Notice GNR
This includes explosives, solvents, lubricants, vehicle and	327, Activity 14:
generator fuel, waste oils etc. Various storage containers and	
storage areas, each of different sizes will be required for the	
different dangerous goods that will be necessary for the mining	
activity.	
The expansion of infrastructure for the bulk transportation of water or	
storm water where the existing infrastructure—	
i. has an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or	
ii. has a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more; and	Listing Notice GNR
(a) where the facility or infrastructure is expanded by more than 1 000	327, Activity 45
metres in length; or	527, ACTIVITY 45
(b) where the throughput capacity of the facility or infrastructure will	
be increased by 10% or more;	

Pipelines will be required for the mine infrastructure, including		
for potable water, storm water and dewatering mine workings. Use		
may be made of existing infrastructure.		
"Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a		
mining right as contemplated in section 22 of the Mineral and		
Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002),		
including — (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks,		
directly related to the extraction of a mineral resource; or (b) the		
primary processing of a mineral resource including winning,		
extraction, classifying, concentrating, crushing, screening or washing;		Listing Notics CN
but excluding the secondary processing of a mineral resource,		Listing Notice GNI 325, Activity 17
including the smelting, beneficiation, reduction, refining, calcining or		325, Activity 17
gasification of the mineral resource in which case activity 6 in this		
Notice applies."		
Mining right for the mining of Diamond Alluvial & Diamond		
general including associated infrastructure, structure and		
earthworks.		
"The development of a road with a reserve wider than 13.5 metres, or		
where no reserve exists where the road is wider than 8 metres." - The		Listing Notice GN
development of 10m wide road, with no road reserve."		327, Activity 24

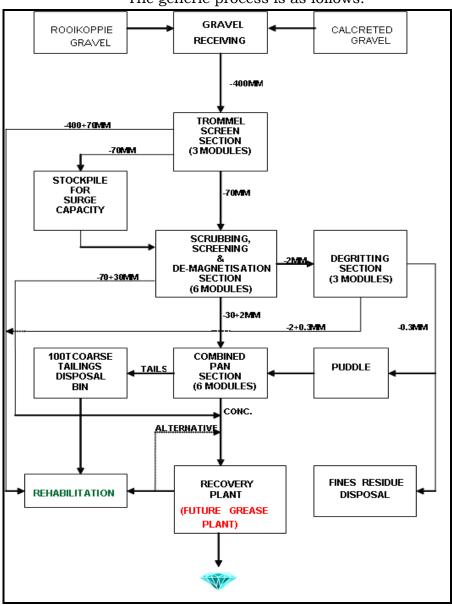
Residue stockpiles or residue deposits: The establishment or	
reclamation of a residue stockpile or residue deposit resulting from	
activities which require a mining right, exploration right or production	
right in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development	NEM:WA 59 of
Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002).	<b>2008</b> (Category B:
	(11))
The waste rock and waste that is separated from the gravel during	
processing, is dumped away from the trenches onto a surface	
waste dump.	
Storage of hazardous waste: The storage of general waste in lagoons.	NEM:WA 59 of
	<b>2008</b> (Category B:
Tailings storage facility.	(1))
<b>Disposal of waste on land:</b> (7) The disposal of any quantity of	NEM:WA 59 of
hazardous waste to land.	2008 (Category B:
	(7))
Disposal of waste on land: (8) The disposal of general waste to land	NEM:WA 59 of
covering an area in excess of 200m <sup>2</sup> and with a total capacity	
exceeding 25 000 tons.	2008 (Category B:
	(8))
<b>Disposal of waste on land:</b> (9) The disposal of inert waste to land in	NEM:WA 59 of
excess of 25 000 tons, excluding the disposal of such waste for	
the purposes of levelling and building which has been authorised by or	2008 (Category B:
under other legislation.	(9))

<b>Treatment of waste:</b> (5) The treatment of hazardous waste in lagoons,			NEM:WA 59 of
excluding the treatment of effluent, wastewater or			2008 (Category B:
sewage.			(5))
Construction of facilities and associated structures and			NEM:WA 59 of
infrastructure: The construction of a facility for a waste management			2008 (Category B:
activity listed in Category B of this Schedule			(10))
Clearance of indigenous vegetation:	2180.2624 Ha Total hectares		
	to be disturbed Concurrent		
"The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous	backfilling will take place in		
vegetation." - Random indigenous vegetation clearance of over a	order to rehabilitate.	Х	Listing Notice GNR
2180.2624 hectares area.		A	325, Activity 15
Approximately 2180.2624 ha of indigenous vegetation is planned			
to be removed for the development of the mine.			
The development of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water or storm water—			
(i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or			
(ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more			Listing Notice GNR
			327, Activity 9
Pipelines will be established for the mine infrastructure, including			
for potable water and storm water			

#### ii) <u>DESCRIPTION OF THE ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE</u> RELATED TO THE DEVELOPMENT

(Describe Methodology or technology to be employed, and for a linear activity, a description of the route of the activity

**Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** has embarked on a process for applying for a Mining Right of Diamonds Alluvial (DA) & Diamonds General (D) combined with a Waste Licence Application on a portion of the remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376; Registration Division: Hay; Northern Cape Province. These farms are preferred due to the sites expected mineral resources. **Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** requires a prospecting right in terms of NEMA and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act to mine diamonds alluvial within the Siyathemba Local Municipality, Northern Cape Province (refer to a locality map attached in **Appendix 3**).



The generic process is as follows:

Figure 3: Mining Process

A generic map is provided due to the complexity of alluvial and kimberlite mining occurring simultaneously. It is extremely difficult to have a predetermined mine plan. Mining and mine planning are reviewed as per results achieved.

The mining schedule will follow as close as practically possible the classification of the resources, i.e. Measured to be mined out first and then Indicated. The schedule will further be dependent on additional exploration activities, and exploration results obtained, that could be undertaken in the future.

For any mine planning that is proposed, the uncertainty regarding this specific style of mineralisation has to be borne in mind, i.e. the location of the mineralised channel gravels, the character of the channel gravels, and the quality, quantity and size of the minerals (alluvial diamonds) itself. Due to economic factors being dependant on the mineralisation, the mining schedule could be required to be modified as mining progresses, and this cannot be foreseen at this stage, especially when planning a medium to long term schedule.

The below map proposes a mine planning schedule for the Measured and Indicated Resource categories, over the short and medium term, divided as follows:

- Short term (Measured Resource) on a monthly basis (periods 1 -23), up to a maximum of two years
- Medium term (Indicated Resource) on a six monthly basis (periods 24 32)

The Short and Medium term mine schedule applied to the Measured and Indicated Resource categories covers a period of seven and a half years.

No mine planning schedule has been drafted for Inferred Resources, as no modifying factors can be applied to resources classified as Inferred (as per SAMREC clauses 67, 68 and 69).

# Basic overview of the mining method

Mining Methods: Although the alluvial diamond deposits and the presence of channels can be inferred, it is necessary that the mining work be accompanied by exploration work to determine the precise location and direction of the channels to follow during mining. Pits will thus be excavated by excavators as part of further exploration work and for mining purposes. Trenches will be excavated with excavators. The topsoil will be removed and stored separately. The gravel will be removed and transported by ADT to the mining plant. Here it will be stored and transported by a FEL to the washing machines.

The gravel will be washed using the so-called "dry-method" and/or "wet-method" depending on the, among others, the weather, regulatory requirements, economies of scale. Depending on the method, waste will either be washed back into the trenches and/ or re-directed to the tailings dam.

The possible diamond bearing gravel will be mortised into bins, where after the gravel will be sorted by a flow sort and/or DMS o possibly find diamonds.

#### **OPEN CAST MINING**



#### Water uses and Water Supply:

According to the Baseline Hydrogeological Investigation conducted by a qualified specialist, Water is proposed to be abstracted from the Orange River for the mining operations. A water sample was therefore collected from the Orange River abstraction point to establish if any constituents pose a risk to the underlying aquifer once mining commence. The co-ordinates of the sample are presented in Table 3. Please refer to **appendix 11-2** 

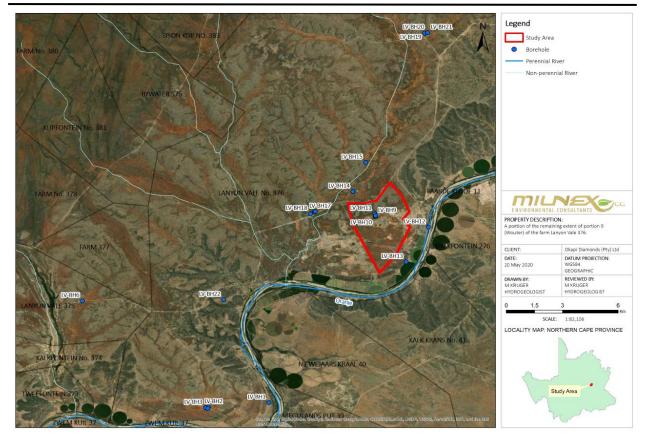
Sample ID	Latitude	Longitude	Comments
River	-29.3516 <b>7</b> 1°	23.143428°	A sample was collected from the Orange river

Water Use Pan Size specifications for Alluvial Diamond Mining (DWS NC & FS, 2001).

Pan size	Water/hour (m <sup>3</sup> )	Water/day(m <sup>3</sup> )	Gravel/hour (tons)	Gravel/day (ton)
16	17	170	60	600

Since  $4 \ge 16$  feet washing pans will be used, the amount of water for the pans will be 68 000 L/hour from which 30% is re-used.

Figure 4 below show boreholes on site



**Figure 4**: Tested boreholes on site (Map adapted from Baseline Hydrogeological Investigation)

# <u>Ablution</u>

Chemical toilets shall be used where necessary, no french drains and pits shall be permitted.

#### Access road

Access will be obtained from Hay Besproeiing tar road which changes into a gravel road and existing roads will also be used on the proposed area.

#### Storage of dangerous goods

During the mining activities, limited quantities of diesel and fuel, oil and lubricants will be stored on site. These goods should be placed in a bunded area one and a half times the volume of the total amount of goods to be stored.

#### **Electricity**

The mine will require power supply from the national grid for the beneficiation plant and workshops. This will supply the washing plant, drying plant, workshops and offices and ancillary uses.

### Mining activities and phases

Please find the Mining Work Programme attached as **Appendix 9**.

LIST OF EQUIPMENT		
1 x Bonfiflioli Crane		
1 x BELL Diezelbowser		
1 x Volvo EC380 Excavator		
1 x Volvo EC380DL Excavator		
2 x Volvo EC480DL Excavator		
1 x Komatsu WA420 Front End Loader		
4 x Volvo L120F Front End Loader		
2 x CAT777G Dumpers		
1 x Volvo A35F Dumpers		
3 x Volvo A60 ADT Dumpers		
1 x Komatsu D475A Bulldozer		
2 x CAT D11T Bulldozer		

#### Efficiency of the process

The diamond pan is one of the oldest methods that are used for concentrating and the recovery of diamonds in the North West region.

From the stock pile the gravel is screened. Screens are fed to a capacity of 75% for effectiveness and to obtain 80-90% efficiency.

The method is relatively cost-effective but produces a large amount of concentrate and recovery efficiencies are very sensitive to size distribution of the feed and the quality of the medium - called puddle.

Pan efficiencies are normally calculated at approximately 80% recovery of the product, provided that all operational parameters are being adhered to and medium contamination is kept to the minimum. Losses would mainly occur in the very small diamond fractions.

#### Description of equipment and activities impacting electricity cost (excluding the

processing plant)

Equipment that may have an impact on electricity costs are listed below, and the applicant spends approximately R40 000.00 monthly on electricity.

- Welder, Grinder, Electrical driller, Lights, computers in office.

#### Mining activities and phases

Please find the Mining Work Programme attached as Appendix 8.

## E. POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT

(a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is located and an explanation of how the proposed development complies with and responds to the legislation and policy context;)

Title of legislation, policy or guideline:	Administering authority:	Promulgation Date:
National Environmental Management Act	Department of Environmental	27 November 1998
No. 107 of 1998 as amended.	Affairs	21 110/0111001 1990
Constitution of South Africa Act 108 of	National	18 December 1996
1996		
The National Heritage Resources Act	SAHRA	1999
(Act No. 25 of 1999)		
Mineral and Petroleum Resources	Department of Mineral	2002
Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)	Resources & Energy (DMRE)	
National Infrastructure Plan	National	
National Environmental Management:	Department of Environmental	7 June 2004
Biodiversity Act No. 10 of 2004	Affairs	
National Environmental Management Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)	National & Provincial	1 July 2009
EIA regulations under NEMA	Department of Environmental Affairs	14 December 2014
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act,1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983)	Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries	1 June 1984
National Environmental Management Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004).	National and Provincial	11 September 2004
National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998).	National	20 August 1998
Northern Cape Province Growth and Development Strategy	Provincial	11 August 2013
Pixley ka Seme district Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	Municipal	
Siyathemba Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP) Review	Municipal	

National Forest Act (Act 84 of 1998) (NFA)	National	30 October 1998
National Veld & Forest Fires Act (Act 101 of 1998)	National	27 November 1998

#### Policy and Legislative Context

APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND GUIDELINES USED TO COMPILE THE REPORT (a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including an identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks and instruments that are applicable to this activity and are to be considered in the assessment process	REFERENCE WHERE APPLIED	HOW DOES THIS DEVELOPMENT COMPLIY WITH AND RESPOND TO THE LEGISLATION AND POLICY CONTEXT. (E.g. In terms of the National Water Act a Water Use License has/ has not been applied for)
The Constitution of South Africa (Act No. 108 of 1996)		The Constitution is the supreme law of the Republic and all law and conduct must be consistent with the Constitution. The Chapter on the Bill of Rights contains a number of provisions, which are relevant to securing the protection of the environment. Section 24 states that "everyone has the right to (a) an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being and (b) to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that – (i) prevent pollution and ecological degradation; (ii) promote conservation; and (iii) secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development. The Constitution therefore, compels government to give effect to the people's environmental right and places government under a legal duty to act as a responsible custodian of the countries environment. It compels government to pass legislation and use other measures to protect the environment, to prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation and secure sustainable development.
The National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998)	S24(1) of NEMA S28(1) of NEMA	NEMA provides for co-operative governance by establishing principles and procedures for decision-makers on matters affecting the environment. An

		important function of the Act is to serve as an enabling Act for the promulgation of legislation to effectively address integrated environmental management. Some of the principles in the Act are accountability; affordability; cradle to grave management; equity; integration; open information; polluter pays; subsidiary; waste avoidance and minimisation; co-operative governance; sustainable development; and environmental protection and justice.
		The mandate for EIA lays with the National Environmental Management Act (107 of 1998) and the EIA Regulations No. 982, 983, 984, and 985 promulgated in terms of Section 24 of NEMA. The EIA Regulations determine that an Environmental Authorisation is required for certain listed activities, which might have a detrimental effect on the environment. This EIA was triggered by activity 21, 24(ii) and 27 listed in Regulation R983, which requires a 'basic assessment process.'
The National Water Act (Act No. 36 of 1998)	S21	Sustainability and equity are identified as central guiding principles in the protection, use, development, conservation, management and control of water resources. The intention of the Act is to promote the equitable access to water and the sustainable use of water, redress past racial and gender discrimination, and facilitate economic and social development. The Act provides the rights of access to basic water supply and sanitation, and environmentally, it provides for the protection of aquatic and associated ecosystems, the reduction and prevention of pollution and degradation of water resources.
		As this Act is founded on the principle that National Government has overall responsibility for and authority over water resource management, including the equitable allocation and beneficial use of water in the public interest, a person can only be entitled to use water if the use is permissible under the Act. Chapter 4 of the Act lays the basis for regulating water use.

Management: Air Quality Act (Act No. 39 of 2004)	S21	The object of this Act is to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the protection and enhancement of the quality of air in the Republic; the prevention of air pollution and ecological degradation; and securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development. Regulations No. R248 (of 31 March 2010) promulgated in terms of Section 21(1) (a) of the National Environmental Management Act: Air Quality Act (39 of 2004) determine that an Atmospheric Emission License (AEL) is required for certain listed activities, which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a detrimental effect on the environment. The Regulation also sets out the minimum emission standards for the listed activities. It is not envisaged that an Atmospheric Emission License will be required for the proposed development.
The National Heritage Resources Act		The Act aims to introduce an integrated and interactive system for the
(Act No. 25 of 1999)		management of the heritage resources, to promote good government at all
(		levels, and empower civil society to nurture and conserve heritage
		resources so that they may be bequeathed to future generations and to lay
		down principles for governing heritage resources management throughout
		the Republic. It also aims to establish the South African Heritage Resources
		Agency together with its Council to co-ordinate and promote the
		management of heritage resources, to set norms and maintain essential
		national standards and to protect heritage resources, to provide for the
		protection and management of conservation-worthy places and areas by
		local authorities, and to provide for matters connected therewith.
		The Act protects and manages certain categories of heritage resources in
		South Africa. For the purposes of the Heritage Resources Act, a "heritage
		resource" includes any place or object of cultural significance. In this

	regard the Act makes provision for a person undertaking an activity listed in Section 28 of the Act to notify the resources authority. The resources authority may request that a heritage impact assessment be conducted if there is reason to believe that heritage resources will be affected.
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 85 of 1983)	The objective of the Act is to provide for control over the utilization of the natural agricultural resources of the Republic in order to promote the conservation of the soil, the water sources and the vegetation and the combating of weeds and invader plants; and for matters connected therewith.
	Consent may be required from the Department of Agriculture in order to confirm that the proposed development is not located on high potential agricultural land.
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)	The Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act identifies the state as the official custodian of South Africa's Mineral and Petroleum Resources. Therefore all activities relating to the reconnaissance, prospecting rights, mining rights, mining permits and retention permits are regulated by the State. A mining permit application has been lodge with the Department of
	Mineral Resources – Northern Cape Province
National Infrastructure Plan	The National Government adopted a National Infrastructure Plan in 2012. With the plan they aim to transform the South African economic landscape while simultaneously creating significant numbers of new jobs, and strengthening the delivery of basic services.

	Government will over the three years from 2013/14 invest R827 billion in building and upgrading existing infrastructure.
	These investments will improve access by South Africans to healthcare facilities, schools, water, sanitation, housing and electrification. On the other hand, investments in the construction of ports, roads, railway systems, electricity plants, hospitals, schools and dams will contribute to faster economic growth.
	This mining activity will indirectly contribute to the growing of the South African economy by supplying SANRAL with material to build and upgrade road infrastructure.
National Forest Act 84 of 1998	The protection, sustainable management and use of forests and trees within South Africa are provided for under the National Forests Act (Act 84 of 1998).
	Prohibition on destruction of trees in natural forests
	(1) No person may -
	(a) cut, disturb, damage or destroy any indigenous tree in a natural forest; or
	(b) possess, collect, remove, transport, export, purchase, sell, donate or in any other manner acquire or dispose of any tree, or any forest product derived from a tree contemplated in paragraph (a), except in terms of-
	(i) a licence issued under subsection (4) or section 23; or

	(ii) an exemption from the provisions of this subsection published by the Minister in the <i>Gazette</i> on the advice of the Council.
National Environmental Management: Protected	
Areas Act 57 of 2003	This Act provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable
	areas representative of South Africa's biological diversity and its natural
	landscapes and seascapes. It also seeks to provide for the sustainable
	utilization of protected areas and to promote participation of local
	communities in the management of protected areas.
National Environmental Management: Waste Act,	
2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)	Section 24S of NEMA deals with the management of residue stockpiles and
	residue deposits and provides that Residue stockpiles and residue deposits
	must be deposited and managed in accordance with the provisions of the
	National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of
	2008), on any site demarcated for that purpose in the environmental
	management plan or environmental management programme in question
	The management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits must be done
	in accordance with any conditions set out and any identified measures in
	the environmental authorisation issued in terms of NEMA, an
	environmental management programme and a waste management licence
	issued in terms of NEMA (Regulation 3(2)).
National Environmental Management: Waste Act,	The mumber of these Demiletions is to nemilete the misming and
2008	The purpose of these Regulations is to regulate the planning and management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits from a prospecting,
(Act No. 59 Of 2008) Regulations regarding the	mining, exploration or production operation.
Planning & Management of Residue Stockpiles &	mining, exploration of production operation.
Residue Deposits from a Prospecting, Mining,	
Exploration or Production	
Operation	

### F. NEED AND DESIRABILITY OF THE PROPOSED ACTIVITIES.

(a motivation for the need and desirability for the proposed development, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred [location] development footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;).

Mining has played a vital role in the economy of South Africa for over 100 years. In 2015 the mining industry contributed R286 billion towards South African Gross Domestic Product (GDP) representing 7.1% of overall GDP. Mining is a significant contributor to employment in the nation, with 457 698 individuals directly employed by the sector in 2015. This represents just over 3% of all employed nationally. Diamond mining has 17 885 direct employees.

Diamonds, arguably the ultimate luxury mineral, comprise an intricate lattice of carbon atoms, a crystalline structure that makes them harder than any other form in nature. This characteristic makes diamonds not only popular in jewellery, but also desirable in high-tech cutting, grinding and polishing tools (Chamber of Mines, South Africa, 12:2016).

According to the Chamber of Mines the country's diamond sector is far from reaching the end of its life even though diamond mining has been taking place in South Africa for almost a century and a half. The primary sources of all of South Africa's diamonds are kimberlites in ancient, vertically dipping volcanic pipes most of which were located in the vicinity of the city of Kimberley and which were initially amenable to open-cast.

Economic growth - South Africa's total reserves remain some of the world's most valuable, with an estimated worth of R20.3-trillion. Overall, the country is estimated to have the world's fifth-largest mining sector in terms of GDP value.

It has the world's largest reserves of manganese and platinum group metals (PGMs), according to the US Geological Survey, and among the largest reserves of gold, diamonds, chromite ore and vanadium.

With South Africa's economy built on gold and diamond mining, the sector is an important foreign exchange earner, with gold accounting for more than one-third of exports. In 2009, the country's diamond industry was the fourth largest in the world.

Mining is a cornerstone of the economy, making a significant contribution to economic activity, job creation and foreign exchange earnings. Mining and its related industries are critical to South Africa's socio-economic development.

#### G. A MOTIVATION FOR THE PREFERRED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT

(-within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;)

NB!! – This section is about the determination of the specific site layout and the location of infrastructure and activities on site, having taken into consideration the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and the consideration of alternatives to the initially proposed site layout.

# Location of the site

The location of the site is preferred due to the presence of shallow diamond. Access will be obtained from existing tar and gravel roads.

As discussed in the previous section, based on outcomes of previous studies in the vicinity of the proposed site, the possibility to encounter high volumes of of Diamonds Alluvial (DA) & Diamonds General (D) combined with a Waste Licence Application on the remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376; Registration Division: Hay; Northern Cape Province, were identified.

# **Preferred activity**

The prospecting of diamonds alluvial is the optimum preferred activity for the site. The shallow diamond deposits makes the site ideal for alluvial diamond mining. The mine will provide significantly more job opportunities than what is providing currently.

# H. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT

(-within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report, including:)

# i) Details of the development footprint alternatives considered;

# • <u>Consideration of alternatives</u>

The DEAT 2006 guidelines on 'assessment of alternatives and impacts' proposes the consideration of four types of alternatives namely, the no-go, site, activity, and technology alternatives. It is however, important to note that the regulation and guidelines specifically state that only 'feasible' and 'reasonable' alternatives should be explored. It also recognizes that the consideration of alternatives is an iterative process of feedback between the developer, the EAP and Interested and affected parties, which in some instances culminates in a single preferred project proposal. The following sections explore each type of alternative in relation to the proposed activity.

#### • <u>Location alternatives</u>

This alternative asks the question, if there is not, from an environmental perspective, a more suitable location for the proposed activity. No other properties have been secured by **Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** near Hopetown area to potentially mine diamonds alluvial. Also, it is expected that the diamonds alluvial been deposited on this farm and therefore the applicant would like to commence with their prospecting activities.

Land capability is the combination of soil suitability and climate factors. The proposed development falls within **Land in Class VII**; which has very severe limitations that makes it unsuited to cultivation and that restrict its use largely to grazing, woodland or wildlife.

- Restrictions are more severe than those for Class 6 because of one or more continuing limitations that cannot be corrected, such as:
  - Very steep slopes.
  - Erosion.
  - Shallow soil.
  - o Stones.

- Wet soil.
- Salts or sodicity.
- Unfavourable climate.
- Physical conditions are such that it is impractical to apply such pasture or range improvements as seeding, liming and fertilizing.
- Depending on soil characteristics and climate, land in Class 7 may be well or poorly suited to woodland.

In unusual instances some occurrences may be used for special crops under unusual management practices. (AGIS, 2016)..

Refer to Land capability map attached as **Appendix 5 & figure 5 below**.

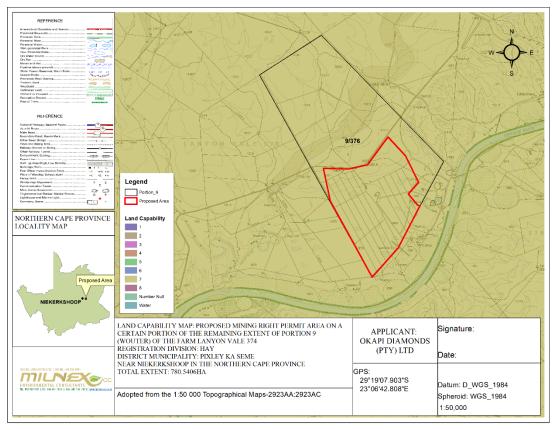


Figure 5: Land capability

# • <u>Activity alternatives</u>

The environmental impact assessment process also needs to consider if the development of an alluvial diamond mine would be the most appropriate land use for the particular site.

Mining of other commodities –from the surface and desktop assessment indicates that there are no indications that there are other commodities to be mined on the site, except alluvial diamond.

# • Design and layout alternatives

Design alternatives were considered throughout the planning and design phase (i.e. where is the diamond bearing gravel located?). In this regard discussions on the

design were held between the EAP and the developer. The layout follows the limitations of the site and aspects such as, roads, site offices and workshop area.

The proposed area consists pans, multiple reservoirs, tributaries from different pans, infrastructure & houses. Where applicable a Water Use License Application will be launched for conducting mining operations. All infrastructure will be temporary and/or mobile.

# • **Operational alternatives**

Due to the nature of the prospecting activities, no permanent services in terms of water supply, electricity, or sewerage services are required.

The activities will commence with a site investigation and desktop studies, which will comprise of non-invasive techniques. This manner of survey will ensure that the applicant can clearly delineate areas which are suitable for further investigation and no unnecessary surface disturbance will be undertaken.

Based on the outcome of the desktop studies and site investigation, pits will be dug by an excavator for the purpouse of soil sampling. If gravel is found, the applicant wil determine the the composition and quality of the gravel.

The applicant will proceed with this way of prospecting by means of the open cast/trenching method, simultaneously or after pitting depending on the information obtained from the earlier work done. The trenches will be dug to remove and wash the gravel. It will be washed by a 10-18 feet washing pan to determine diamond proceeds per 100 tons of gravel.

All data will be consolidated and processed to determine the diamond bearing resources on the property. This will be a continuous process throughout the prospecting work programme.

No feasible alternatives to the pitting and trenching method currently exists. Impacts associated with the prospecting operations will be managed through the implementation of a management plan, developed as part of the application for authorisation.

# • <u>No-go alternative</u>

This alternative considers the option of 'do nothing' and maintaining the status quo. The description provided in section H of this report could be considered the baseline conditions (status quo) to persist should the no-go alternative be preferred. The site is currently zoned for agricultural land uses. Should the proposed activity not proceed, the site will remain unchanged.

#### **Technology alternatives**

Based on outcomes of the geological study and the previous mining activities on/around the proposed area, the possibility to encounter further Diamonds Alluvial (DA) & Diamonds General (D) for a Mining Right were identified.

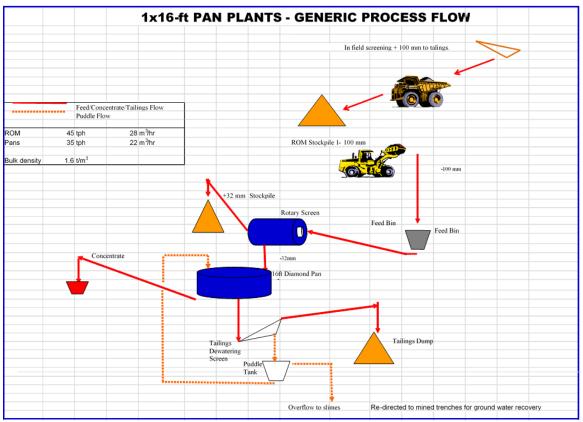


Figure 6: Mine design

In terms of the technologies proposed, these have been chosen based on the longterm success of their mining history. The mining activities proposed in the Mining Works Programme (**Appendix 9**) is dependent on the preceding phase as previously discussed, therefore no alternatives are indicated, but rather a phased approach of trusted mining techniques.

The preferred technology for the proposed mining activity, will be to remove the diamond bearing gravel with an excavator, depositing it in the 10 - 18 feet rotary pan(s) to be washed and sorted. Please find the Mining Work Programme attached as **Appendix 9**.

Advantages					Disadvantages	
	-			mostly	for	10 times more expensive than Rotary pan
kimberlite deposits						
						Water consumption is high
						Operating costs are expensive

Pros & Cons of the alternative Dense Media Separation (DMS)

In a Dense Media Separation (DMS) plant, powdered ferrosilicon (an alloy of iron and silicone) is suspended in water to form a fluid near the density of diamond (3.52 g/cm3), to which the diamond bearing material is added to begin the separation process of the heavier minerals from the lighter material. Additional separation of the denser material occurs by centrifuge in "cyclones" that swirl the mixture at low and high speeds, forcing the diamonds and other dense minerals to the walls and then out the bottom of the cyclone. Waste water rises at the center of the cyclones

and is sucked out and screened to remove waste particles. The DMS process results in a concentrate that generally weighs less than one percent of the original material fed into the plant at the beginning of the process.

visadvantages
he industry perception that Rotary Pan
lants yield poorer diamond recoveries

Pros & Cons of the alternative **Rotary Pan Plants** 

In a Rotary Pan plant, crushed ore, when mining kimberlite, or alluvial gravel and soil is mixed with water to create a liquid slurry called "puddle" which has a density in the 1.3 to 1.5 g/cm3 range. The mix is stirred in the pan by angled rotating "teeth". The heavier minerals, or "concentrate", settle to the bottom and are pushed toward an extraction point, while lighter waste remains suspended and overflows out of the centre of the pan as a separate stream of material. The concentrate, representing just a small percentage of the original kimberlite ore or alluvial gravels, is drawn off for final recovery of the diamonds.

Both methods are in actual fact used for bulk material reduction and require a further process for the final diamond recovery however, for this project the Rotary Pan will be used.

When it comes to dust suppression two main methods were considered, namely molasses stillage and the wetting (water) of roads. The table below provides a short summary of the advantages and disadvantages of each.

Water	Molasses stillage
More cost effective	Much more expensive
Could lead to the depleting of water	Requires less water
resources	
No damage (only if used excessively)	The product may be toxic to aquatic
	organisms. (As this product could have
	physical effects on aquatic organisms for
	e.g. floating, osmotic damage)
No harm to humans or	Not Hazardous or toxic.
animals(Only a high quantity will	Could cause irritation to eyes, skin or when
have harm to humans or animals)	ingested and inhaled.
Non-flammable	Non-flammable
Eye-wash fountains not needed	Eye-wash fountains in the work place are
	strongly recommended
	Working procedures should be designed to
	minimize worker exposure to this product.
Basic storing methods	Storing methods are a bit more
	complicated. Should be stored in a plastic,

plastic lined or stainless steel, tight closed containers between 5 and 40 degrees
Centigrade.

Considering the above mentioned information, water will be used for dust suppression purposes.

# ii) Details of the Public Participation Process Followed

Describe the process undertaken to consult interested and affected parties including public meetings and one on one consultation. NB the affected parties must be specifically consulted regardless of whether or not they attended public meetings. (Information to be provided to affected parties must include sufficient detail of the intended operation to enable them to assess what impact the activities will have on them or on the use of their land.

# **Advertisement and Notices**

An advertisement was placed in English in the local newspaper (Noordkaap) on 13 November 2019 (see Appendix 6) notifying the public of the EIA process and requesting Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) to register with, and submit their comments to Milnex CC. I&APs were given the opportunity to raise comments within 30 days of the advertisement.

# Site notices

Site notices were placed (as anticipated on the coordinates below) on site in English on **22 November 2019** to inform surrounding communities and immediately adjacent landowners of the proposed development. I&APs will be given the opportunity to raise comments. Photographic evidence of the site notices will be included in **Appendix 6**. Below are the coordinates where the site notices were placed



Figure 7: Site notice co-ordinates

## <u>Direct notification and circulation of Scoping Report to identified I&APs, land</u> <u>owners and occupiers</u>

Identified I&APs, including key stakeholders representing various sectors, are directly informed of the proposed development and the availability of the Scoping Report via registered post on **5 November 2019** and were requested to submit comments by **5 December 2019**. A copy of the report is also available at the Milnex offices in Schweizer-Reneke, 4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke and Potchefstroom (Waterberry Street, Waterberry Square, 1st floor, Office 5B, Potchefstroom), between 7:30AM and 5PM, Monday to Friday. For a complete list of stakeholder details and for proof of registered post see **Appendix 6**. The consultees included:

# Table 1: List of Stakeholders, Land owners, & surrounding land owners

Stakeholders	Land owners	Surrounding Land owner
Northern Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Nature Conservation (DENC)	PG Vlok Trust	Elsiesdrif Plase Pty Ltd
DMR Department of Mineral Resources, Northern Cape		Lanyonvale Landgoed CC
The Department of Water & Sanitation (DWS)		Atro Plase Pty Ltd
NC Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)		PG Vlok Trust
Northern Cape Department of Agriculture, Land Reform & Rural Development		HC Van Wyk Diamonds Ltd
Department of Public Works, Roads and Transport in NW (DPWRT)		
Northern Cape Department of Rural Development & Land Reform,		
The Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa (WESSA)		
ZF Mgcawu District Municipality		
The Municipal Manager at the Siyathemba Local Municipality		
The Local Councilor at the Siyathemba Local Municipality		

# 2. Consultation

The Public Meeting was scheduled for the **22nd of November 2019 at 10:00am– 11:00am** approximately 37 km from the Niekerkshoop Police Station on the gravel road at the coordinates mentioned below. The coordinates and directions (figure 1) of the public meeting follows below.

## **Coordinates**

29°18'43.07"S

23° 9'9.33"E

## **Directions to Public Meeting**

- Drive from Niekerkshoop Police Station on the tar road which turns into a gravel road for approximately 24 km.
- Turn right after the first 24 km and continue driving for approximately 8 km.
- Turn left after the 8 km at the triangular stop and continue straight for approximately 4 km where the public meeting will be held the triangular stop.



Figure 8: Directions to the public meeting

# Public meeting:

**NB:** The interested and affected parties were given an opportunity to register via site notice, press advert and letters.

Even though notices were sent only Milnex CC Environmental Consultants representative Miss Lizanne Esterhuizen was at the meeting.

# Direct notification and circulation of Draft EIR & EMPr to identified I&APs, landowners and occupiers

Identified I&APs, including key stakeholders representing various sectors, are directly informed of the proposed development and the availability of the Draft EIR & EMPr via registered post on **24 February 2020** and were requested to submit comments by **26 March 2020.** A copy of the report is also available at the Milnex offices in Schweizer-Reneke, 4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke and Potchefstroom (Waterberry Street, Waterberry Square, 1st floor, Office 5B, Potchefstroom), between 7:30AM and 5PM, Monday to Friday. For a complete list of stakeholder details and for proof of registered post see **Appendix 6**.

# **Issues Raised by Interested and Affected Parties**

Comments received during this period are attached as comment & response report as well as populated in the table of summary of issues raised.

# iii) Summary of Issues Raised by I&APs

## (Complete the table summarising comments and issues raised, and reaction to those responses)

Interested and Affected Parties List the names of persons consulted in this column, and Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted.		Issues raised	EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant	Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issue and or
Organisation	Contact person			response where incorporated
Land Owner				
	PG Vlok Trust Petrus Gideon Vlok	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale			Email sent in afrikaan to Mr Vlok is summarised and translated to english stating: Dear Mr Vlok We refer to the abovementioned	
RE/9/376	PG Vlok Trust Arnoldus Christiaan Vlok	No comments received	matter and telephone conversation between yourself and our offices Mr Broodryk on the 7th day of April 2020-04-20. During the aforesaid telephone conversation you confirmed that you and the applicant, Mr Steyn, have on numerous occasions corresponded regarding the application and aspects to draft and finalise a	

			surfaceuseagreement.Arrangementsweremade tomeetandtosubsequentlyfinalisediscussions todraft the surface useagreement,but could thismeetingnottake place due to the nation widelockdownandhave we discussed tomeetaftertheupliftmentlockdownandhave we discussed toYoufurthermoreconfirmed that youdonothaveanyobjectionagainst,butwould like tofinalise theuseagreementbeforeminingactivitiescommence.We will convey theinformation totheapplicant.	
Surrounding Land Owr	ners			
Lanyon Vale 10/376	Elsiesdrif Plase Pty Ltd	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale 22/376	Lanyonvale Landgoed Cc	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale 4/376	Atro Plase Pty Ltd	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale 14/376	Pg Vlok Trust	No comments received		
Lanyon Vale 25/376	H C Van Wyk Diamonds Ltd	No comments received		
	ch jurisdiction the develo	pment is located		
Siyathemba Local Municipality	Municipal Manager: Mr I W G Stadhouer	No comments received		
	he ward in which the site	is located		
Siyathemba Local Municipality	Ward 4 Councillor	No comments received		
Organs of state having	jurisdiction	20		

Noutlana Cours			
Northern Cape			
Department of			
Environmental Affairs	Mrs. Doreen Werth	No comments received	
and Nature			
Conservation (DENC)			
		Letter dated 11/12/2019 acknowledged	
		the receipt of the application.	
	Martalla Davida		
	Machalla Ramaboea	Acknowledgement does not grant	
		permission to commence with Mining	
		activities	
		letter dated 24/01/2020 stated the	
		application is accepted.	
		and also mentions the following:	
		2. In terms of section 18 (e) of the	
DMR Department of		Act, you are directed to comply with the	
Mineral Resources,		following instructions:	
Northern Cape. (DMR)			
	Mmboweni	a Notify and consult with the	
	Mutheiwana	a Notify and consult with the landowner, lawful occupier and any	
	Muthelwana		
		interested and affected party and include	
		the result of the consultation in the	
		environmental reports.	
		Lodge an application in terms of	
		National Water Act No.36 of 1998 with	
		the Department of Water Affairs with	
		immediate effect.	
		BEE documents need to be	
		submitted by 30 January 2020	

The Department of Water & Sanitation	Mr. G. van Dyk	No comments received		
(DWS) NC Department of	To whom it may concern	No comments received		
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)	Chief forester Mrs. J. Mans	No comments received		
	Mr. Harm Vorster	No comments received		
Northern Cape Department of Agriculture, Land Reform & Rural Development	Mr. W.J.J. de Bruyn	No comments received		
Department of Roads and Public Works (DRPW)	<b>HOD: Ms. Ruth Palm</b> Mr Tshiamo Pitso	No comments received		
Northern Cape Department of Rural Development & Land Reform,	Nqabisa Mkalipi & Pabalelo Mokale	Letter dated 04/11/2019 states that there is no land claim on the database in respect of the properties. This includes the database for claims lodged by 31 December 1998; and those lodged between 1 July 2014 and 27 July 2016.	Enquiry sent 04/11/2019 to Pabalelo Mokale inquiring if the properties on the application area has claims on them	
<b>Other–</b> Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality	Municipal Manager: Mr Rodney Pieterse	No comments received		
WESSA (National Office)	To whom it may concern	No comments received		
South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited (SANRAL)	Nicole Abrahams	Email received on 09/03/2020 stating that The South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited (SANRAL) has		

received background information and a
site layout plan for this proposed project
and based on its location and proximity
to the nearest national road could have
an impact on SANRAL.
If services need to be constructed over or
under the national road, (in this case the
N10) or within 60m measured from the
road reserve fence, the service owner
must apply for a written permission from
SANRAL, before any work may be carried
out. It would therefore trigger a SANRAL
statutory process.

## iv) the environmental attributes associated with the development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;

#### **Baseline Environment**

The baseline environment is described with specific reference to geotechnical conditions, ecological habitat and landscape features, Soil, land capability and agricultural potential, climate and the visual landscape.

## <u>Historic Mining</u>

Some proof exists of extensive historic mining over the proposed portion.



Figure 9: Evidence of previous mining infrastructure still on site

## (a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity.

(its current geographical, physical, biological, socio- economic, and cultural character).

## **Geology and Soils**

The present Orange River between Douglas and Prieska displays a meandering channel morphology, best developed in areas underlain by the Dwyka Group. All the different fluvial terrace deposits are covered by Rooikoppie gravels, which represent mobile, multi-cycle deflation and gravitational deposits and/or elevated (inverted) fluvial

deposits and preserved and recycled repeatedly from one successive land surface to the next. Only the most durable silicic clast Branded iron formation (BIF, quartzite, chart, etc.) survived this deflation recycling and diamonds are only present shere the Rooikoppie gravels recycled older diamondiferous fluvial deposits.

Palaeochannel depositional packages of the Orange River are preserved at different elevations above the present Orange River bed. Diamondiferous Rooikoppie gravel scree slopes higher than the oldest preserved fluvial deposits suggest that even older and higher elevation paleo-deposits were present and have been removed completely by erosion.

The ages of these terraces young with decreasing elevation and vary from Pleistocene-Pilocene for the lower terraces to Plio-Miocene for the upper terraces. Conversely, the probability of preservation decreases with increasing age and elevation.

The most consistent high level paleo deposit, and the one on on which the geological model for this area was developed, occurs between 60-90m above river level. These deposits represent palaeomeanders exhibiting a wavelength of approximately 13km and an amplitudeof about 6km, very similar th that of the modern-river. These gravel deposits occur at about 1000 masl. and generally slope slightly to the south, away from the Orange River. Both the calcrete cap and the bedrock exhibit this same slope. The menaders are generally covered entirely by either calcrete or wind-blown sand, or both, but careful mapping have defined points of entry and emergence of palaeochannel deposits from underneath the upper calcrete cap, along the valley scarps.

Frequency of occurrence suggests that the known deposits represent the complete palaeochannel profile for this section of the river. The correspondence in palaeo- and modern river morphology, for this cycle, indicates that this sector of the Orange River system remained in relative equilibrium since, probably, the Miocene. All the preserved meanders at this elevation lie to the south of the present river channel suggesting that meander cut-off occurred mostly along the northern loops of the meanders. This may be an indication of regional slope to the south or slow, continuos uplift to the north.

The primary sources of diamonds trapped in the palaeogravels of the Orange River are kimberlites and intermediate secondary sources like elivial, colluvial and fluvial deposits in the catchment regions of the Vaal and Orange rivers. These diamonds were deposited along the vourse of the river in fabourable trap sites either in bedrock-traps or in pointbar complexes and within-channel bars, particularly in meanders, scour pools and areas of divergent flow.

In the range of deposits on Wouterspan and within the context of the model presented diamonds were first deposited in gravel units at an elevation of + 110m above the present river. As a result of consecutive cycles of continental uplift and erosion, the oldest diamondiferous gravels deposited by the Orange River have been recycled and redeposited repeatedly through time down to the lowest level gravels as preserved today.

Lower elevation terraces (less than about 30m above present river bed) of the Orange River are typified by up to 30% sand matrix with a high proportion of zeolite-rich sand lenses and a high proportion of red Drakensberg basalt clasts. These gravels normally exhibit intermediate to low diamond grades. They are typically cobble-peddle gravels with occasional boulders. Clast composition is dominated by BIF +60%, andesite, dolerite, shale, quartzite, riebeckite and others with a low percentage of agate and amygdales. Clast-rounding is moderate, packing is moderate to poor which impacts negatively on diamond entrapment potensial. Average grades of 0.5-1.2ct/m<sup>3</sup> or 0.23-0.54cpht are known with the occurrence of occasional large stones. The lowest terrace does not appear to be as calcreted as the upper two terraces and mining is, therefore, easier. Lower terrace deposits are generally covered by 1-4m of sand shereas the upper terrace deposits are capped by a hard calcrete layer some 2-3m thick which protected the gravel deposits from erosion and prevented exploitation in the past.

The Wouterspan deposit comprises an extensive flat lying alluvial sequence located on the right bank of the modern Orange River extending across an area of approximately 4x3km. the bedrock is well exposed in the workings and shale and tillite of the Karoo age Dwyka Group, are common. The bedrock displays an irregular erosional surface with gully and pothole features creating high diamond trapping potential.

At Wouterspan, the gravel terrace occurs approximately 20-40m above the Orange River and appear to have been deposited in a braided river environment. These terraces are, probably, of lower to imtermediate age.

Thin (<2m), extensive Rooikoppie blanket the property. The fluvial-alluvial sequence is comprised of a basal gravel overlain by a generally upward-fining sequence with hanging gravel lenses known as "Middlings". The sequence is covered by a (non-silcreted) calcrete cap, generally less than 5m thick. Post-depositional weathering of this calcrete has formed solution hollows called "makondos" which are often filled with diamond-enriched rooikoppie gravels.

# Mineralisation

The palaeochannel gravels are mineralised by diamonds derived from the weathering and erosion of kimberlites present in the headwaters of the paleo-Vaal river system. Colluvial and eluvial post-depositional modification of these fluvial-alluvial deposits resulted in the formation of the rooikoppie gravels.

Under arid conditions low stream flow typically results in wide, shallow channels. The valleys displays moderate sinuosity and braiding may be frequent. Braided streams are highly transient environments. The braided channel are unstable through time and gravel bars are formed and destroyed continuously. Shifting bars and channels cause wide varations in local flow conditions resulting in varied depositional assemblages. Common feature in braided stream deposits include irregular bed thicknesses, restricted lateral and vertical variations within the sediments, and evidence of erosion and re-deposition.

## **Ecological habitat and landscape features**

## Vegetation

The proposed site for prospecting falls within the Nama-Karoo Biome (Mucina & Rutherford 2006), which is a complex of extensive plains, dominated by low (dwarf) shrubs of <1m tall, intermixed with grasses, succulents, geophytes and annual forbs. Small trees occur mainly along drainage lines or on rocky outcrops. Biomes are further divided into bioregions, which are spatial terrestrial units possessing similar biotic and physical features, and processes at a regional scale. The study area is situated within the Upper Karoo Bioregion and the Northern Upper Karoo (NKu 4) vegetation type (Figure 8). This vegetation type is Least Threatened with a 21% conservation target.

Endemic taxa known to occur within this vegetation type include the Succulent Shrubs: Chasmatophyllum rouxii, Hertia cluytiifolia, Rabiea albinota, Salsola tetrandra; the Tall Shrub: Phymaspermum scoparium; and the Low Shrubs: Aspalathus acicularis subsp. planifolia, Selago persimilis, S. walpersii. The following important species are known to occur within the Northern Upper Karoo:

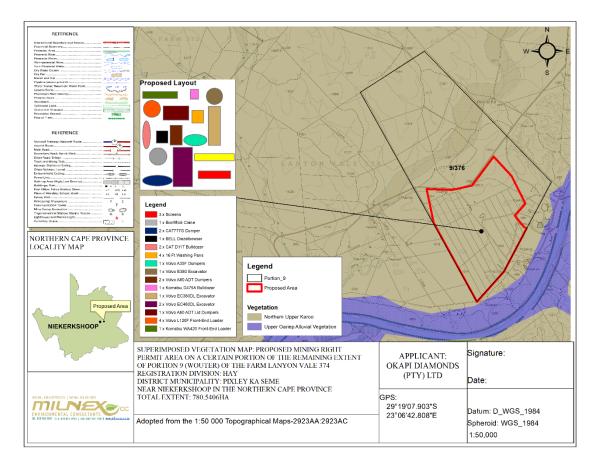


Figure 10: Vegetation Unit Map

# Mined/disturbed area

This area has been heavily impacted upon by previously mining activities that has led to the removal of natural vegetation. recorded species include *Prosopis glandulosa*,

Searsia burchellii, Ziziphus mucronata (regenerating), Senegalia mellifera, Nicotiana glauca, Dodonaea angustifolia, Vachellia karoo, Xanthium strumarium. Forb and herbs species include Bidens pilosa, Datura stramonium, Tagetes minuta, Argemone mexicana, Conyza bonariensis, Conyza canadensis, and Cosmos bipinnatus.

## <u>Senegalia mellifera shrubland</u>

The shrub Senegalia mellifera is the most conspicuous woody species. Other more sparsely distributed tall shrubs include *Phaeoptilum spinosum*, *Rhigozum obovatum*, *Searsia burchellii* and *Ziziphus mucronata*, *Vachellia karoo*. Common lower shrubs include *Rhigozum trichotomum*, *Asparagus burchellii*, *Kleinia longiflora*, *Pegolettia retrofracta*, *Pteronia glauca*, *Monechma spartioides*, *Pentzia incana*, *P. globosa*, *Aptosimum spinescens*, *A. albomarginatum*, *Aizoon asbestinum*, *Barleria rigida and Eriocephalus sp.* 

The grass layer is well developed with rather high species richness and includes the dominant *Enneapogon scaber*, as well as other grasses such as *Cenchrus ciliaris*, *Eragrostis annulata*, *Enneapogon desvauxii*, *E. scoparius*, *Heteropogon contortus*, *Stipagrostis obtusa*, *S. ciliata var.capensis and Eragrostis lehmanniana*. The nationally protected tree *Boscia albitrunca* occurs widespread at medium densities. They occur primarily as young or stunted individuals, with an average height of 60 cm and 2 m in width, but taller. One *Hoodia gordonii* was encountered (-29.3064560S, 23.1845640 E).

## Threatened Ecosystems

Ecosystem threat status outlines the degree to which ecosystems are still intact or alternatively losing vital aspects of their structure, function and composition, on which their ability to provide ecosystem services ultimately depends (Driver *et al.* 2011). Datasets have been developed by SANBI (2016) in order to outline threatened ecosystems, with the primary objective of limiting the rate of ecosystem extinctions. Four established categories group these ecosystems namely: Critically Endangered (CR), Endangered (EN), Vulnerable (VU) and Protected.

No threatened terrestrial ecosystems were identified within the vicinity of the proposed mining site

# **Protected Areas**

Formally protected areas are protected either by national or provincial legislation. Based on the SANBI (2010) Protected Areas Map (**Figure 11**), the study site does not overlap with any formally protected area. Therefore, the location of the proposed mining site is not expected to have an impact on any formally protected areas.

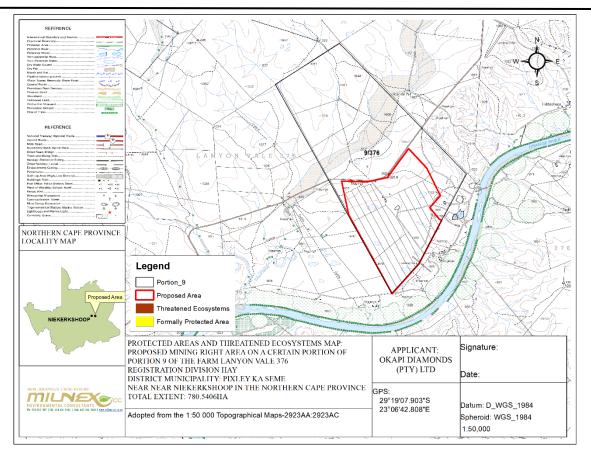


Figure 11: Protected Areas Map

# Critical Biodiversity Area

Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) are terrestrial and aquatic areas of high biodiversity value that need to be conserved and maintained in a natural or near-natural state to ensure the continued existence and functioning of species and ecosystems and the delivery of ecosystem services (MTPA, 2014). According to the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) (Act no. 107 of 1998) certain activities have strict guidelines or are prohibited within CBAs and ESAs. Refer to the listed activities under the NEMA: Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations of 2014 (GNR 982) as promulgated in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA) [as amended] for a comprehensive breakdown. The following terms are used to categorise the various land used types according to their biodiversity and environmental importance:

- Critical Biodiversity Area One (CBA1);
- Critical Biodiversity Area Two (CBA2);
- Ecological Support Area (ESA);
- Other Natural Areas (ONA); and
- Protected Area (PA).

Based on the desktop information (**Figure 12**), much of the proposed mining site will overlap with CBA2s and ESAs. Some PAs are also evident across the central and western regions of the site.

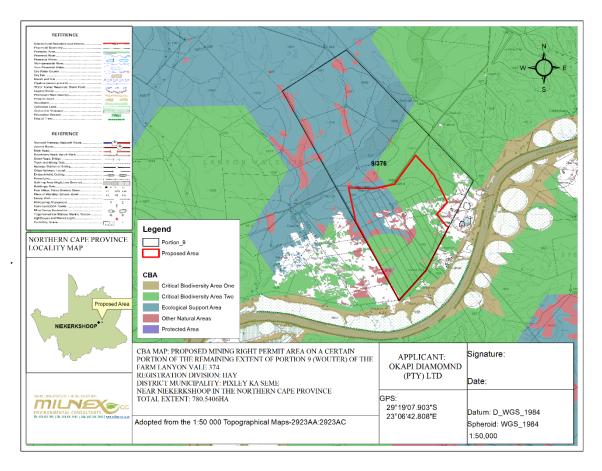


Figure 12: Critical Biodiversity Areas Map.

An Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report was conducted and based on the desktop information (Figure 12), large sections of the study site overlap with CBA2. These areas are mostly covered in natural vegetation. The depressions wetland areas are classed as CBA1 and the north western section of the study site is classed as an ESA.

# **Biodiversity Priority Areas for Mining**

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline was developed in 2013 for the purpose of mainstreaming biodiversity management practices into the mining sector (DEA, DMR, Chamber of Mines, SAMBF & SANBI 2013). This Guideline provides explicit direction in terms of where mining-related impacts are legally prohibited, where biodiversity priority areas may present high risks for mining projects, and where biodiversity may limit the potential for mining. The Guideline distinguishes between four categories of biodiversity

priority areas in relation to their importance from a biodiversity and ecosystem service perspective as well as the implications for mining in these areas (Table 2).

<b>Table 1:</b> Four categories of biodiversity priority areas in relation to their biodiversity	
importance and implications for mining.	

Category	Biodiversity Priority	Risks for	Implications for Mining
Category	Areas	Mining	Implications for mining
A. Legally Protected	<ul> <li>Protected areas (including National Parks, Nature Reserves, World Heritage Sites, Protected Environments, Nature Reserves)</li> <li>Areas declared under Section 49 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)</li> </ul>	Mining Prohibited	Mining projects cannot commence as mining is legally prohibited. Although mining is prohibited in Protected Areas, it may be allowed in Protected Environments if both the Minister of Mineral Resources and Minister of Environmental Affairs approve it. In cases where mining activities were conducted lawfully in protected areas before Section 48 of the Protected Areas Act (No. 57 of 2003) came into effect, the Minister of Environmental Affairs may, after consulting with the Minister of Mineral Resources, allow such mining activities to continue, subject to prescribed conditions that reduce environmental impacts.
B. Highest Biodiversity Importance	<ul> <li>Critically endangered and endangered ecosystems</li> <li>Critical Biodiversity Areas (or equivalent areas) from provincial spatial biodiversity plans</li> <li>River and wetland Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (FEPAs) and a 1km buffer around these FEPAs</li> <li>Ramsar Sites</li> </ul>	Highest Risk for Mining	Environmental screening, environmental impact assessment (EIA) and their associated biodiversity specialist studies should focus on confirming the presence and significance of these biodiversity features, and to provide site-specific basis on which to apply the mitigation hierarchy to inform regulatory decision-making for mining, water use licences, and environmental authorisations.

			If they are confirmed, the likelihood of
			a fatal flaw for new mining projects is
			very high because of the significance
			of the biodiversity features in these
			areas and the associated ecosystem
			services. These areas are viewed as
			necessary to ensure protection of
			biodiversity, environmental
			sustainability, and human well-being.
			An EIA should include the strategic
			assessment of optimum, sustainable
			land use for an area and will
			determine the significance of the
			impact on biodiversity.
			This assessment should fully
			consider the environmental
			sensitivity of the area, the overall
			environmental and socio-economic
			costs and benefits of mining, as well
			as the potential strategic importance
			of the minerals to the country.
			Authorisations may well not be
			granted. If granted, the authorisation
			may set limits on allowed activities
			and impacts and may specify
			biodiversity offsets that would be
			written into licence agreements
			and/or authorisations.
	Protected area buffers		
	(including buffers around		These areas are important for
	National Parks, World		conserving biodiversity, for
C. High Biodiversity Importance	Heritage Sites* and Nature	High Risk	supporting or buffering other
	rsity	for Mining	biodiversity priority areas, and for
	Reserves)	ior mining	maintaining important ecosystem
	Transfrontier		services for communities or the
	Conservation Areas		country.
	(remaining areas outside		

	of formally proclaimed		An EIA should include an assessment
	protected areas)		of optimum, sustainable land use for
	• Other identified priorities		an area and will determine the
	from provincial spatial		significance of the impact on
	biodiversity plans		biodiversity.
	• High water yield areas		Mining options may be limited in
	Coastal Protection Zone		these areas, and limitations for
	• Estuarine functional zone		mining projects are possible.
	*Note that the status of		Authorisations may set limits and
	buffer areas of World		specify biodiversity offsets that would
	Heritage Sites is subject to		be written into licence agreements
	a current intra-		and/or authorisations.
	governmental process		
			These areas are of moderate
			biodiversity value.
			EIAs and their associated specialist
			studies should focus on confirming
			the presence and significance of these
	• Ecological support areas		biodiversity features, identifying
D. Moderate	• Vulnerable ecosystems	Moderate	features (e.g. threatened (land-based
	• Focus areas for protected		and offshore protection) species) not
Biodiversity	area expansion (land-		included in the existing datasets, and
Importance	based and offshore	Mining	on providing site-specific information
	protection)		to guide the application of the
			mitigation hierarchy.
			Authorisations may set limits and
			specify biodiversity offsets that would
			be written into licence agreements
			and/or authorisations.

Based on **Figure 13**, the proposed mining site overlaps with Category B, Highest Risk for Mining, and therefore has highest biodiversity importance. Rigorous evaluation of the biodiversity content of applications is required, as well as the application of the mitigation hierarchy to reduce impacts on biodiversity in these areas

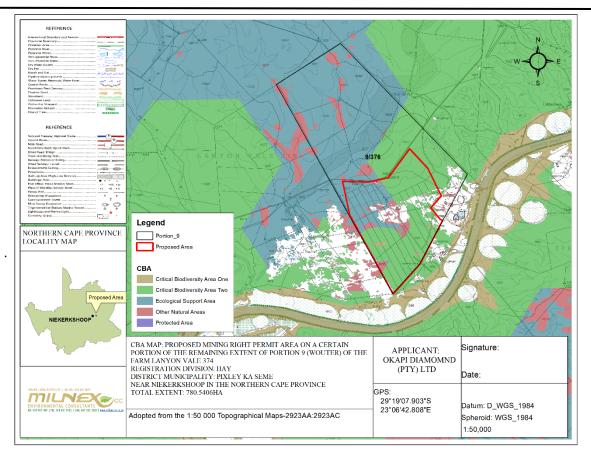


Figure 13: Sensitive area for mine

# Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas

Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) are a network of sites that are significant for the long-term viability of naturally occurring bird populations (Birdlife 2019). Many sites are also important for other forms of biodiversity; therefore, the conservation of Important Bird & Biodiversity Areas ensures the survival of a correspondingly large number of other animals and plants.

No IBAs were identified within the vicinity of the proposed mining site (Figure 14).

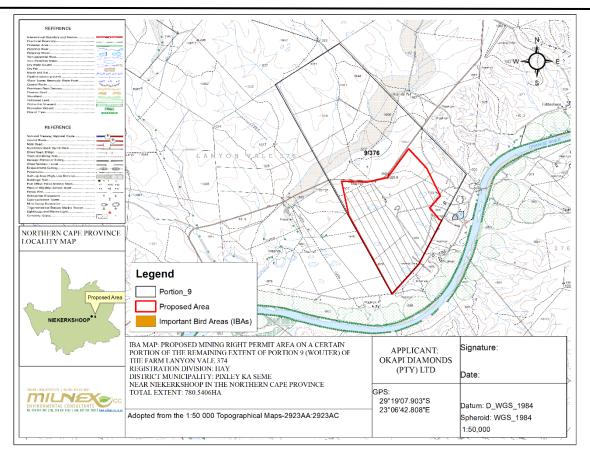


Figure 14: Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas

# Wetland Areas

In terms of Section 1 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), wetlands are legally defined as: "land which is transitional between terrestrial and aquatic systems where the water table is usually at or near the surface, or the land is periodically covered with shallow water, and which land in normal circumstances supports or would support vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil" (NWA 1998).

Wetlands are defined by the presence of unique soils and vegetation that do not occur in terrestrial and purely aquatic environments (Edwards *et al.* 2018). Wetland soils are referred to as hydric soils that develop under anaerobic conditions (condition where oxygen is virtually absent from the soil). Wetlands are also typically characterized by relatively large and dense stands of plants sticking out of shallow water or wet soil. Plants adapted to such waterlogged conditions are referred to as hydrophytes. Wetlands are distinct from true aquatic ecosystems like river ecosystems, which are characterized by fast flowing water within channels, and lake ecosystems, that are flooded to great depth; both of which are not primarily characterized by the occurrence of hydric soils and hydrophytes.

**Figure 14** illustrates all wetland types associated with the proposed mining area, which consists only of Depressions. The wetland vegetation type forms part of the Upper Nama Karoo (**Figure 15**).

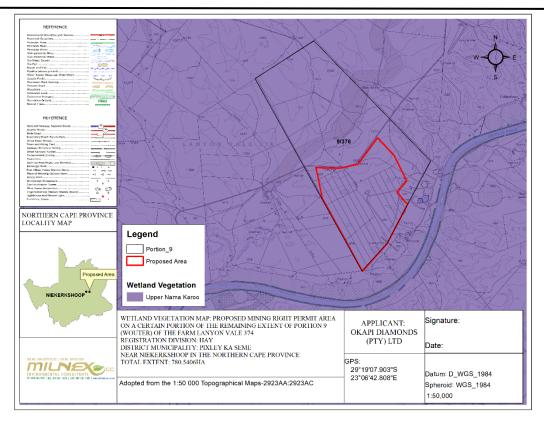


Figure 15: Wetland types present on site

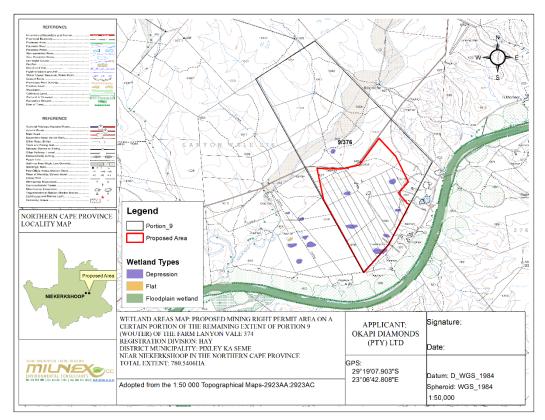


Figure 16: Wetland vegetation type

An Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report One Perennial Riparian area (the Orange River), is situated more than 1 (one) Kilometre away from the site's boundary towards the south and was therefore not assessed for this study. Please see **Appendix 11-1** for the full report. According to the report there are depressions or pans on the proposed area.

• The **Depression or pan** wetlands are defined as "a landform with closed elevation contours that increases in depth from the perimeter to a central area of greatest depth, and within which water typically accumulates."

Feature	Level 1:	Level 2: Regional	Level 3: Landscape	Level 4: Hydrogeomorphic
	System	Setting	Unit	(HGM) Unit
Depression Pans	Inland System: An aquatic ecosystem with no existing connection to the ocean.	Ecoregion: Nama Karoo NFEPA WetVeg Group: Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Group 3	<b>Plain:</b> An extensive area of low relief. These areas are generally characterised by relatively level, gently undulating or uniformly sloping land with a very gentle gradient that is not located within a valley. Gradient is typically less than 0.01 or 1:100.	Depression:Small(deflationary)depressionswhich arecircular or oval; usually foundon the crest positions in thelandscape.The topographiccatchment area can usuallybe well-defined (i.e. a smallcatchment area following thesurroundingwatershed).Although often apparentlyendorheic (inward draining),many pans are "leaky" in thesensethathydrologically connected toadjacentvalleybottomsthrough subsurface diffuseflow paths.Alldepressionidentifiedhaveclosedcatchments.

# Wetland Delineation

Calculated buffer zones for wetlands were also based on mining operations and were calculated as follows (Figure 17):

• Depressions: 50 m

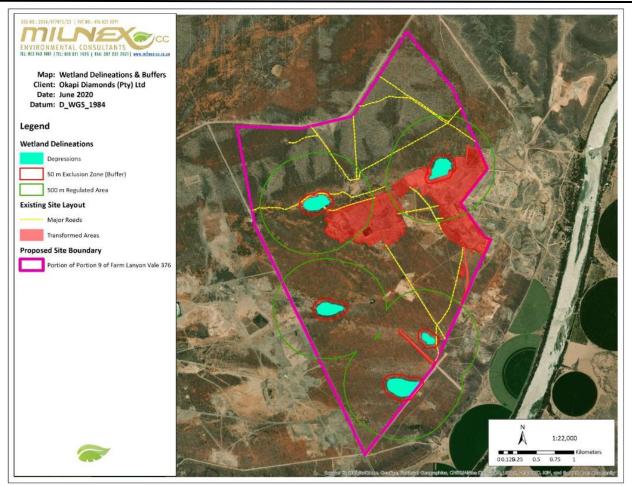


Figure 17: Wetland delineation and buffers

# **River Ecosystem Status**

According to Figure 18, the status of the both the Orange River to the South of the proposed mining site boundary and the Lanyon Spruit on the West, are classed Moderately Modified (Class C).

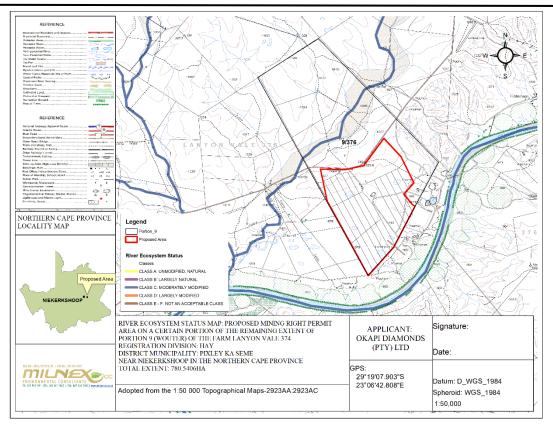


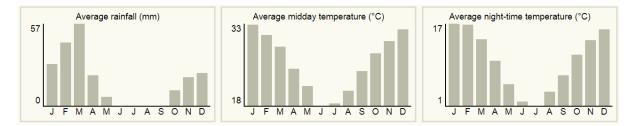
Figure 18: River Ecosystem Status

# Land capability and agricultural potential

• <u>Climate and water availability</u>

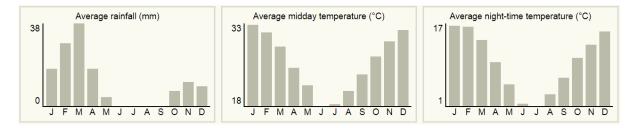
The proposed area is between Douglas and Prieska.

Douglas normally receives about 211mm of rain per year, with most rainfall occuring mainly during autumn. The chart below (lower left) shows the average rainfall values for Douglas per month. It receives the lowest rainfall (0mm) in June and the highest (57mm) in March. The monthly distribution of average daily maximum temperatures (centre chart below) shows that the average midday temperatures for Douglas range from 18.4°C in June to 32.9°C in January. The region is the coldest during July when the mercury drops to 1°C on average during the night. Consult the chart below (lower right) for an indication of the monthly variation of average minimum daily temperatures (SAExplorer, 2014).



Prieska normally receives about 132mm of rain per year, with most rainfall occuring mainly during autumn. The chart below (lower left) shows the average rainfall values for Prieska per month. It receives the lowest rainfall (0mm) in June and the highest (38mm)

in March. The monthly distribution of average daily maximum temperatures (centre chart below) shows that the average midday temperatures for Prieska range from 17.9°C in June to 32.7°C in January. The region is the coldest during July when the mercury drops to 1.3°C on average during the night. Consult the chart below (lower right) for an indication of the monthly variation of average minimum daily temperatures (SAExplorer, 2014).



## Description of the socio-economic environment

#### • <u>Socio-economic conditions</u>

Siyathemba Municipality contributed 11.9% to the District population (i.e. the second largest Local Municipality in the District by population) and 1.9% to the population of the Northern Cape.

The most dominant population group is Coloured4. This group represents 80% of the total population in the municipal area. The other groups are black (12%) and white (8%).

Afrikaans is the most widely spoken language (78%). There are an insignificant number of people which speaks other languages. A total of 824 people indicated that IsiNdebele is their first language and 91 people speak Setswana.

## **Unemployment**

There has been a decrease in the number of people employed and a concomitant increase in the number of unemployed in the district between these the 2001 and 2011 censuses. This is directly related to the number of businesses that has closed in the region during the period reflected and indicates the need for a retention or wholesale and retail strategy regarding these businesses. Unemployment reaching approximately 28.3% 2011 and Youth unemployment reaching 35.4% in 2011 as per Stats SA 2011 Census.

## Regional Gross Domestic Product

The district contribution to the provincial GDPR has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining from 10,6% to 9,6% between 2003 and 2004. The economy is predominantly primary sector focused with manufacturing and tourism also contributing to the district economy.

The economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDPR of Pixley Ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing.

Table 20 below represents the percentage contribution per economic sector by the district to the gross domestic product of the province for 2003 and 2004.

				% 0	F GDPR					
	Primary		Secondary Tertiary		Taxes - Subsidies		Total GDPR			
	2003	2004	2003	2004	2003	2004	2003	2004	2003	2004
Namakwa	4,3	3,8	0,5	0,4	7,3	7,0	0,7	0,8	12,8	12,1
PKSDM	3,1	2,7	1,0	0,9	5,8	5,2	0,8	0,8	10,6	9,6
Siyanda	3,8	3,3	1,3	1,3	8.0	7,7	1,1	1,2	14,2	13,5
Frances Baard	6,8	6,2	3,2	3,1	26,1	28,6	2,5	2,0	38,6	40,7
Kgalagadi	16,7	16,5	1,4	1,3	4,9	5,5	0,7	0,8	23,8	24,1
NC GDPR	34,7	32,6	7,3	7,1	52,1	54,0	5,8	5,6	100,0	100,0

Pixley Ka Seme's total percentage contribution in 2003 was 10,6% and declined to 9,64% in 2004. The district contribution to the GDP has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining. It is evident that the tertiary sector contributes the greatest percentage to the GDP of the Northern Cape, followed by the primary sector and then the secondary sector.

The Pixley Ka Seme district displays a similar characteristic as the province with respect to its sectoral contributions to GDPR; the economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDPR of Pixley Ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing, with its secondary sector contribution being the least. The manufacturing sector is part of the secondary sector which indicates that it has declined over the period of 2003 (0, 97%) and in 2004 (0, 92%).

Pixley Ka Seme's total percentage contribution in 2003 was 10,6% and declined to 9,64% in 2004. The district contribution to the GDP has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining. It is evident that the tertiary sector contributes the greatest percentage to the GDP of the Northern Cape, followed by the primary sector and then the secondary sector.

The Pixley Ka Seme district displays a similar characteristic as the province with respect to its sectoral contributions to GDPR; the economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDPR of Pixley Ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing, with its secondary sector contribution being the least. The manufacturing sector is part of the secondary sector which indicates that it has declined over the period of 2003 (0, 97%) and in 2004 (0, 92%). To transform and diversify the status of the districts economy will require a concerted effort to improve and create development opportunities within this sector.

## Location Quotient

A comparative advantage indicates a relatively more competitive production function for a product or service in specific economy than the aggregate economy. This economy therefore renders this service more efficiently. The location quotient is an indication of the comparative advantage of an economy in terms of its production and employment. A location quotient greater than 1 indicates a comparative advantage regarding the sector in one location with respect to another.

The analysis below indicates the location quotient of the Pixley ka Seme District with respect to the Northern Cape Province. The table and graph below indicates the location quotients of sectors in the district municipality with respect to the Northern Cape.

Sectors in the economy of Pixley Ka Seme that have a location quotient larger than 1 are agriculture (2, 35); community, social and personal services (1, 19); transport,

storage and communication (1, 16); electricity, gas and water supply (2, 19). These indicate sectors that show potential for additional development in this does not imply that sectors, that do not feature here, should not be pursued since there may be latent potential in these sectors that could be exploited.

Table 21 below indicates the location quotients of the economic sectors in the municipalities

	Kareeberg	Emthanjeni	DMA	Renosterberg	Siyancuma	Siyathemba	Thembelihle	Ubuntu	Umsobomvu
Agriculture	1,18	0,31	1,62	0,54	1,11	1,46	1,47	1,59	0,82
Mining	0,08	0,05	0,45	0,00	4,28	0,09	0,02	0,21	0,00
Manufacturing	0,41	0,71	1,28	0,13	1,92	0,76	1,99	0,91	0,18
Electricity, gas and water supply	0,17	0,60	0,36	11,42	0,08	1,14	0,23	0,00	0,97
Construction	0,52	1,25	0,85	0,58	0,99	1,69	0,48	0,55	1,00
Wholesale and retail trade	1,12	1,05	1,20	0,56	1,02	0,94	1,17	0,79	1,13
Transport, storage and communication	0,52	1,76	0,53	0,33	0,84	0,83	1,33	0,75	0,51
Finance, insurance, real estate	1,06	1,79	0,94	0,46	0,78	0,71	0,61	0,72	0,67
Community, social and personal services	1,18	1,37	0,58	0,54	0,82	0,72	0,56	0,85	1,55

Table 21: Location Quotients of Economic Sectors

Other sectors in the district that have a distinct comparative advantage with respect to the Northern Cape and South Africa are:

- Electricity, Gas and Water supply
- Community, social and personal services
- Transport, storage and communication

The municipalities in the district that have comparative advantages with respect to the sector Electricity, Gas and Water supply are Renosterberg and Siyathemba with location quotients of 11,42 and 1,14 respectively. This resounding comparative advantage in the sector for the Renosterberg municipality is due to the presence of the Van Der Kloof Dam in the municipality. It is the only sector in which Renosterberg has a comparative advantage with respect to other municipalities in the district.

Kareeberg, Emthanjeni and Umsobomvu have location quotients, with respect to other municipalities in the district, of 1, 18, 1, 37 and 1, 55 respectively in the Community, social and personal services sector. In the Transport, storage and communication sector, Emthanjeni and Thembelihle have location quotients of 1, 76 and 1, 33 respectively, indicating a comparative advantage in this sector with respect to other municipalities in the district. The sectors that contribute significantly to the Northern Cape GDPR is highlighted in the table above with agriculture having the highest LQ, Electricity, gas and water supply second highest LQ etc.

The agricultural sector has the potential for growth with a number of comparative and competitive advantages for the Northern Cape and Pixley Ka Seme in particular.

#### Tress Indicators

The level of diversification or concentration of a region's economy is measured by a tress index. A tress index of zero represents a totally diversified economy whilst the higher the index, the more concentrated or vulnerable the region's economy is to exogenous variables e.g. adverse climatic conditions and commodity price fluctuations.

The economy of the Pixley Ka Seme district has a tress index of 56, 18 indicating a reliance of the Pixley Ka Seme economy on the agriculture, transport and services sector. This tress index indicates that the economy is not diversified but is largely dependent on the agriculture and is vulnerable to exogenous variables such as adverse climatic conditions, commodity price fluctuations. We need to look at ways of diversifying the economy.

• <u>Cultural and heritage aspects</u>

A Phase 1 Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment was conducted by J.A. van Schalkwyk. Please see his findings below and **Appendix 11-3** for the full report:

## Identified sites

During the physical survey, no sites, features or objects of cultural significance were identified.

- Chance finds: Stone Age artefacts, mostly dating to the Middle Stone Age occur in significant numbers all in parts of the study area. In some areas, on the hills closer to the river, the density of artefacts exceeds more than 3/2m2, diminishing to 1/10m2 in the more sandy regions. These are mostly made from banded iron stone and iron rich chert. Cores, flakes and tools are found. The tools are very rough and informal and only a few that can be described as typical were identified. As it is surface material and has already been disturbed by diamond prospecting activities, it is viewed to have low significance Grade 4-C.
- 7.3.1: Old farmstead consisting of a house and some dilapidated outbuildings. The houses consist of two gable-roofed structures that were joined end-to-end. A small porch was added to one section. The house was built with concrete blocks and has a corrugated iron roof. It is evaluated to have high significance Grade 4-A.

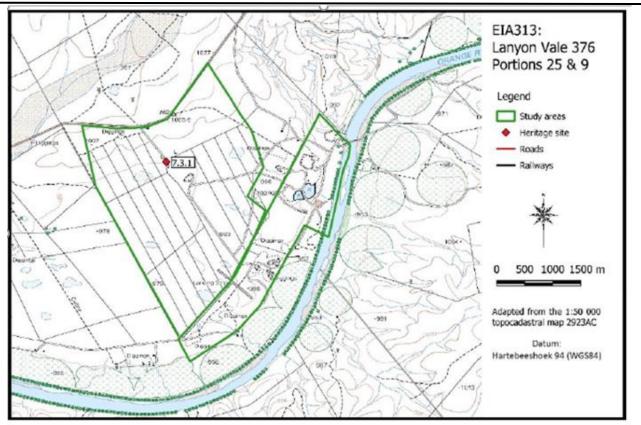


Figure 19: Cultural Heritage Sites

Impact assessment and proposed mitigation measures

Impact analysis of cultural heritage resources under threat of the proposed development, is based on the present understanding of the development:

	IDENTIFIED HERITAGE RESOURCES						
Site No.	Site type	NHRA	Field rating	Impact rating:	Proposed mitigation		
		category		Before/After	(Refer to definitions in		
				mitigation	Section 12.3)		
	EIA318: Stone Age material						
Chance	Stone Age tools	Section 35	Low significance	10	(5) No further action		
finds			Grade 4-C	4	required.		

	IDENTIFIED HERITAGE RESOURCES						
Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating	Impact rating: Before/After mitigation	Proposed mitigation (Refer to definitions in Section 12.3)		
	Historic house						
7.3.1	Historic structures	Section 35	High significance Grade 4-A	60 27	(1) Avoidance/Preserve; (2) Archaeological investigation		

# Legal requirements

The legal requirements related to heritage specifically are specified in Section 3 of this report. For this proposed project, the assessment has determined that no sites, features or objects of heritage significance occur in the study area. If heritage features are identified during construction, as stated in the management recommendation, these finds would have to be assessed by a specialist, after which a decision will be made regarding the application for relevant permits.

• If the identified structure is to be demolished, a valid permit would be required from SAHRA/PHRA prior to its destruction. Such a permit will only be issued after the site has been fully documented – mapped, photographed and described.

Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should be authorised:

• From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed development be allowed to continue on acceptance of the conditions proposed below.

Conditions for inclusion in the environmental authorisation:

- If the identified structure is to be demolished, it must be fully documented mapped, photographed and described beforehand.
- The Palaeontological Sensitivity Map (SAHRIS) indicate that the study area has moderate sensitivity of fossil remains to be found and therefore a desktop palaeontological study of the site is required.

Should archaeological sites or graves be exposed in other areas during construction work, it must immediately be reported to a heritage practitioner so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made.

## Palaeontological Desktop Assessment

According to the Palaeontological Desktop Assessment, *If fossil remains are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the ECO/site manager in charge of these developments must be informed immediately. These discoveries ought to be secured (preferably in situ) and the ECO/site manager ought to alert SAHRA so that appropriate mitigation (documented and collection) can be undertaken by a professional palaeontologist.* 

Please see findings above on **Appendix 11-4** for the full report:

## (b) Description of the current land uses.

Topographical map & google earth revealed the predominant land uses identified on the day of the site visit consists mainly of commercial agricultural crop production to the south of the proposed prospecting site. Various Pivots were observed along the Orange River (**Figure 20**). Mining is taking place to the East and West of the site. The Lanyon Spruit passes the proposed prospecting site along the eastern and northern boundaries. The northern region is largely natural with Grassland and Low Shrubland dominating.

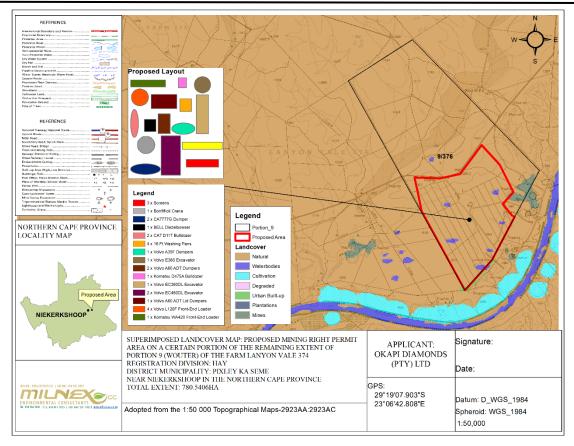


Figure 20: Land cover

According to the Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report, the study site and its surrounding area has been largely transformed, with some small sections which remains fairly natural. The dominant land use in the area is mining, crop farming (pivot irrigation) and water abstraction from the Orange River. Some housing and several access roads are present on the study site, including fenced off areas. Old diamond diggings were observed. Some roads and fences were observed traversing the drainage areas on site. The Orange River, which drains the site in the south, may be severely impacted by site activities. Please refer to page 49 of the study attached as appendix 11-1

- v) The impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts—
- (aa) can be reversed;
- (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
- (cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;

Please see heading J) AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT IMPACT AND RISK,, for the impacts identified and their assessment.

## vi) the methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks;

## Method of environmental assessment

The environmental assessment aims to identify the various possible environmental impacts that could results from the proposed development. Different impacts need to be evaluated in terms of its significance and in doing so highlight the most critical issues to be addressed.

Significance is determined through a synthesis of impact characteristics which include context and intensity of an impact. Context refers to the geographical scale i.e. site, local, national or global whereas intensity is defined by the severity of the impact e.g. the magnitude of deviation from background conditions, the size of the area affected, the duration of the impact and the overall probability of occurrence. Significance is calculated as shown in the Table below.

Significance is an indication of the importance of the impact in terms of both physical extent and time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The total number of points scored for each impact indicates the level of significance of the impact.

## Impact Rating System

Impact assessment must take account of the nature, scale and duration of impacts on the environment whether such impacts are positive or negative. Each impact is also assessed according to the following project phases:

- Construction
- Operation
- Decommissioning

Where necessary, the proposal for mitigation or optimisation of an impact should be detailed. A brief discussion of the impact and the rationale behind the assessment of its significance should also be included. The rating system is applied to the potential impacts on the receiving environment and includes an objective evaluation of the mitigation of the impact. In assessing the significance of each impact the following criteria is used:

## **Table:** The rating system

Include a brief description of the impact of environmental parameter being assessed in the context of the project. This criterion includes a brief written statement of the environmental aspect being impacted upon by a particular action or activity. **GEOGRAPHICAL EXTENT** 

NATURE

1	Site	The impact will only affect the site.
2	Local/district	Will affect the local area or district.
3	Province/region	Will affect the entire province or region.

4	International and National	Will affect the entire country.					
	National	PROBABILITY					
This d	This describes the chance of occurrence of an impact.						
1	Unlikely	The chance of the impact occurring is extremely low (Less than a 25% chance of occurrence).					
2	Possible	The impact may occur (Between a 25% to 50% chance of occurrence).					
3	Probable	The impact will likely occur (Between a 50% to 75% chance of occurrence).					
4	Definite	Impact will certainly occur (Greater than a 75% chance of occurrence).					
		DURATION					
		the impacts. Duration indicates the lifetime of the					
1	t as a result of the propose Short term	The impact will either disappear with mitigation or will be mitigated through natural processes in a span shorter than the construction phase $(0 - 1$ years), or the impact will last for the period of a relatively short construction period and a limited recovery time after construction, thereafter it will be entirely negated $(0 - 2$ years).					
2	Medium term	The impact will continue or last for some time after the construction phase but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter $(2 - 10 \text{ years})$ .					
3	Long term	The impact and its effects will continue or last for the entire operational life of the development, but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter ( $10 - 30$ years).					
4	Permanent	The only class of impact that will be non-transitory. Mitigation either by man or natural process will not occur in such a way or such a time span that the impact can be considered indefinite.					
	INT	ENSITY/ MAGNITUDE					
Descr	ibes the severity of an impa	act.					
1	Low	Impact affects the quality, use and integrity of the system/component in a way that is barely perceptible.					
2	Medium	Impact alters the quality, use and integrity of the system/component but system/component still continues to function in a moderately modified way and maintains general integrity (some impact on integrity).					
3	High	Impact affects the continued viability of the system/ component and the quality, use, integrity and functionality of the system or component is severely impaired and may temporarily cease. High costs of rehabilitation and remediation.					

4	Very high	Impact affects the continued viability of the				
т	very mgn	system/component and the quality, use, integrity				
		and functionality of the system or component				
		permanently ceases and is irreversibly impaired.				
		Rehabilitation and remediation often impossible. If				
		possible rehabilitation and remediation often				
		unfeasible due to extremely high costs of				
		rehabilitation and remediation.				
This	describes the degree to mi					
	bletion of the proposed activ	hich an impact can be successfully reversed upon ity.				
1	Completely reversible	The impact is reversible with implementation of				
		minor mitigation measures.				
2	Partly reversible	The impact is partly reversible but more intense				
		mitigation measures are required.				
3	Barely reversible	The impact is unlikely to be reversed even with				
1	Irreversible	intense mitigation measures.				
4	Inteversible	The impact is irreversible and no mitigation measures exist.				
	IRREPLAC	EABLE LOSS OF RESOURCES				
This	describes the degree to which	ch resources will be irreplaceably lost as a result of a				
	osed activity.	1 5				
1	No loss of resource	The impact will not result in the loss of any resources.				
2	Marginal loss of	The impact will result in marginal loss of resources.				
	resource					
3	Significant loss of	The impact will result in significant loss of				
	resources	resources.				
4	Complete loss of	The impact is result in a complete loss of all				
	resources	resources.				
	C	UMULATIVE EFFECT				
This	describes the cumulative ef	fect of the impacts. A cumulative impact is an effect				
		ficant but may become significant if added to other				
		anating from other similar or diverse activities as a				
resul	lt of the project activity in qu					
1	Negligible cumulative	The impact would result in negligible to no				
-	impact	cumulative effects.				
2	Low cumulative impact	The impact would result in insignificant cumulative effects.				
3	Medium cumulative	The impact would result in minor cumulative				
	impact	effects.				
4	High cumulative impact	The impact would result in significant cumulative effects				
		SIGNIFICANCE				
Signi	ificance is determined throu	gh a synthesis of impact characteristics. Significance				
_		the impact in terms of both physical extent and				
	time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The calculation of					
	ignificance of an impact use					

(Extent + probability + reversibility + irreplaceability + duration + cumulative effect) x magnitude/intensity.

The summation of the different criteria will produce a non-weighted value. By multiplying this value with the magnitude/intensity, the resultant value acquires a weighted characteristic which can be measured and assigned a significance rating.

Points	Impact significance rating	Description
6 to 28	Negative low impact	The anticipated impact will have negligible negative effects and will require little to no mitigation.
6 to 28	Positive low impact	The anticipated impact will have minor positive effects.
29 to 50	Negative medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate negative effects and will require moderate mitigation measures.
29 to 50	Positive medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate positive effects.
51 to 73	Negative high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant effects and will require significant mitigation measures to achieve an acceptable level of impact.
51 to 73	Positive high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant positive effects.
74 to 96	Negative very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant effects and are unlikely to be able to be mitigated adequately. These impacts could be considered "fatal flaws".
74 to 96	Positive very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant positive effects.

#### vii) positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;

- Increased ambient noise levels resulting from geophysic surveys site fly-overs and increased traffic movement during all prospecting phases.
- Potential water and soil pollution impacts resulting from hydrocarbon spills and soil erosion which may impact on environmental resources utilized by communities, landowners and other stakeholders.
- Potential water and soil pollution impacts resulting from hydrocarbon spills and soil erosion which may impact on ecosystem functioning.
- Increased vehicle activity with in the area resulting in the possible destruction and disturbance of fauna and flora.
- Poor access control to farms which may impact on cattle movement, breeding and grazing practices.
- Access control to portion which may impact on cattle movement, breeding and grazing practices of the surrounding community.
- Influx of persons (job seekers) to site as a result of increased activity and the possible resultant increase in opportunistic crime.
- Potential visual impacts caused by prospecting activities.

- Prospecting will be undertaken by specialist sub contractors and it is not anticipated that employment opportunities for local and / or regional communities will result from the prospecting activities.
- Negative impacts on the groundwater resources.
- Longterm loss of indigenous vegetation.
- Airpollution due to dust to the surrounding community and hospital.
- Impact on tourism.

### viii) the possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk;

(With regard to the issues and concerns raised by affected parties provide a list of the issues raised and an assessment/ discussion of the mitigations or site layout alternatives available to accommodate or address their concerns, together with an assessment of the impacts or risks associated with the mitigation or alternatives considered).

Adverse environmental associated with the prospecting activity have been identified through the Scoping & EIR process. Mitigation measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B must be implemented in order to minimise any potential impacts.

All comments received during the review period of the Scoping and EIR report, as well as response provided is captured and recorded within the Comments and Response Report and will be attached in the final EIR.

# ix) if no alternative development [location] footprints for the activity were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and

As discussed in the previous section, based on outcomes of previous studies in the vicinity of the proposed site, it is expected that high volumes of Diamonds Alluvial (DA) & Diamonds General (D) combined with a Waste Licence Application on the remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376; Registration Division: Hay; Northern Cape Province

 x) a concluding statement indicating the location of the preferred alternative development [location] footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;

(Provide a statement motivating the final site layout that is proposed)

Design alternatives were considered throughout the planning and design phase (i.e. where is the rock bed located?). In this regard discussions on the design were held between the EAP and the developer. The layout follows the limitations of the site and aspects such as, roads, site offices and workshop area as well as fencing.

I. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS UNDERTAKEN TO IDENTIFY, ASSESS AND RANK THE IMPACTS THE ACTIVITY AND ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE WILL IMPOSE ON THE PREFERRED [LOCATION] DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ON THE APPROVED SITE (AS CONTEMPLATED IN THE ACCEPTED SCOPING REPORT THROUGH THE LIFE OF THE ACTIVITY, INCLUDING—.)

# i. A description of all environmental issues and risks that are identified during the environmental impact assessment process

#### Process for the identification of key issues

The methodology for the identification of key issues aims, as far as possible, to provide a user-friendly analysis of information to allow for easy interpretation.

- Checklist: The checklist consists of a list of structured questions related to the environmental parameters and specific human actions. They assist in ordering thinking, data collection, presentation and alert against the omission of possible impacts.
- Matrix: The matrix analysis provides a holistic indication of the relationship and interaction between the various activities, development phases and the impact thereof on the environment. The method aims at providing a first order cause and effect relationship between the environment and the proposed activity. The matrix is designed to indicate the relationship between the different stressors and receptors which leads to specific impacts. The matrix also indicates the specialist studies, which will be submitted as part of the Environmental Impact Report in order to address the potentially most significant impacts.

#### Checklist analysis

The site visit was conducted to ensure a proper analysis of the site specific characteristics of the study area. The table below provides a checklist, which is designed to stimulate thought regarding possible consequences of specific actions and so assist scoping of key issues. It consists of a list of structured questions related to the environmental parameters and specific human actions. They assist in ordering thinking, data collection, presentation and alert against the omission of possible impacts. The table highlights certain issues, which are further analysed in matrix format.

**Table:** Environmental checklist

Question 1. Are any of the following locate	YE S ed on	NO the s	Un - sur e site e	Description armarked for the development?
I. A river, stream, dam or wetland	×			An Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report was conducted by Mpho Ramalivhana from Naledzani Environmental Services. According to the report there are depressions or pans on the proposed area.
II. A conservation or open space		×		
III. An area that is of cultural importance		×		According to the Phase 1 HIA conducted by J.A. van Schalkwyk, during the physical survey, no sites, features or objects of cultural significance were identified.

IV. Site of geological significance			×	
V. Areas of outstanding natural beauty		×		According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the dominating land-use on site is mining (buildings, plant infrastructure, existing ramps (for mining), stockpiles, offices, various mining equipment, open trenches, existing roads), also reservoirs, worker accommodation, landing strip, tracks and hiking trails.
VI. Highly productive agricultural land		×		The proposed area falls within land capability Class 7. According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the dominating land-use on site is mining (buildings, plant infrastructure, existing ramps (for mining), stockpiles, offices, various mining equipment, open trenches, existing roads), also reservoirs, worker
VII. Floodplain		X		
VIII. Indigenous forest		×		
				According to the Ecological and Wetland
IX. Grass land	×			Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the grass layer is well developed with rather high species
IX. Grass land X. Bird nesting sites	×		×	Ramalivhana, the grass layer is well developed with rather high species According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the project area has the propensity to harbour Red Data Bird Species however none were observed
	×		×	Ramalivhana, the grass layer is well developed with rather high species According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the project area has the propensity to harbour Red Data Bird
X. Bird nesting sites XI. Red data species XII. Tourist resort	×	×		Ramalivhana, the grass layer is well developed with rather high species According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the project area has the propensity to harbour Red Data Bird Species however none were observed during the field surveys According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, two species of concern were recorded on site. These are Boscia albitrunca, Aloe claviflora and Hoodia gordonii.
X. Bird nesting sites XI. Red data species XII. Tourist resort <b>2. Will the project potentially re</b>	×	in po		Ramalivhana, the grass layer is well developed with rather high species According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the project area has the propensity to harbour Red Data Bird Species however none were observed during the field surveys According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, two species of concern were recorded on site. These are Boscia albitrunca, Aloe claviflora and Hoodia gordonii.
X. Bird nesting sites XI. Red data species XII. Tourist resort	×			Ramalivhana, the grass layer is well developed with rather high species According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the project area has the propensity to harbour Red Data Bird Species however none were observed during the field surveys According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, two species of concern were recorded on site. These are Boscia albitrunca, Aloe claviflora and Hoodia gordonii.

III. Noise pollution	×			Activities are only carried out during the day no activity is done at night due to noise levels which may affect surrounding infrastructure and people.
IV. Construction of an access road		×		Access will be obtained from Hay Besproeiing tar road which changes into a gravel road and existing roads will also be used on the proposed area.
V. Risk to human or valuable ecosystems due to explosion/fire/ discharge of waste into water or air.		×		
VI. Accumulation of large workforce (>50 manual workers) into the site.		×		Employment opportunities will be created during the different phase of the project.
VII. Utilisation of significant volumes of local raw materials such as water, wood etc.		×		Additional water requirements related to the portable water supply for employees, workers, to keep the drill cool and dust suppression.
VIII. Job creation	×			Employment opportunities will be created during the different phase of the project.
IX. Traffic generation		×		None.
X. Soil erosion		×		The application is for a prospecting right without bulk sampling, only drilling and pitting sampling will take place.
XI. Installation of additional bulk telecommunication transmission lines or facilities		×		None.
3. Is the proposed project locate	ed nea	ar the	e foll	owing?
I. A river, stream, dam or wetland	×			The Orange river is approximately 1km from the proposed area.
II. A conservation or open space			×	
III. An area that is of cultural			×	
IV. A site of geological significance			×	
V. An area of outstanding natural			×	
VI. Highly productive agricultural land	×			The proposed area falls within land capability Class 7. Central pivot irrigation systems can be found all along
VII. A tourist resort			×	
VIII. A formal or informal		×		

Matrix analysis

The matrix describes the relevant listed activities, the aspects of the development that will apply to the specific listed activity, a description of the environmental issues and potential impacts, the significance and magnitude of the potential impacts, and the mitigation of the potential impacts. The matrix also highlights areas of particular concern, which requires more in depth assessment. Each cell is evaluated individually in terms of the nature of the impact, duration and its significance – should no mitigation measures be applied. This is important since many impacts would not be considered insignificant if proper mitigation measures were implemented. The matrix also provides an indication if mitigation measures are available.

In order to conceptualise the different impacts the matrix specify the following:

- **Stressor**: Indicates the aspect of the proposed activity, which initiates and cause impacts on elements of the environment.
- **Receptor**: Highlights the recipient and most important components of the environment affected by the stressor.
- **Impacts**: Indicates the net result of the cause-effect between the stressor and receptor.
- **Mitigation**: Impacts need to be mitigated to minimise the effect on the environment.

ii) An assessment of the significance of each issue and risk and an indication of the extent to which the issue and risk could be avoided or addressed by the adoption of mitigation measures;

LISTED ACTIVITY (The Stressor)	ASPECTS OF THE DEVELOPMENT /ACTIVITY			POTENTIAL IMPACTS	MA	GNIFICANCE AND MAGNITUDE OF TENTIAL IMPACTS		MITIGATION OF POTENTIAL IMPACTS	SPECIALIST STUDIES /				
(,	,		Receptors	Impact description	Minor	Major	Durati on	Possible Mitigation	INFORMATION				
CONSTRUCTION PHASE	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·												
of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous	Areas earmarked for prospecting will need to be cleared, topsoil will be		Fauna & Flora	<ul> <li>Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural vegetation.</li> <li>Loss of sensitive species.</li> <li>Loss or fragmentation of habitats.</li> </ul>	-		М	Yes	-				
vegetation			Air	• Air and dust pollution due to the increase of traffic of construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-				
		ENVIRONMEN	Soil	<ul> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Loss of topsoil.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-				
			Geology	• It is not foreseen that the removal of indigenous vegetation will impact on the geology or vice versa.	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-				
		BIOPHYSICAL	Existing services infrastructur e	<ul> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at a licensed landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the local sewage plant.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-				
		н	Ground water	• Pollution due to construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-				
							Surface water	<ul> <li>Increase in storm water run-off.</li> <li>Pollution of water sources due to soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams).</li> </ul>		-	S	Yes	-
		AIC r	Local unemployme nt rate	<ul><li>Job creation.</li><li>Business opportunities.</li><li>Skills development.</li></ul>	+		S	Yes	-				
		SOCIAL/ECONOMIC FULTEONMENT	Visual landscape	• Potential visual impact on residents of farmsteads and motorists in close proximity to proposed facility.	-		S	Yes	-				
		CIAL/	Traffic volumes	• Increase in construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-				
		SO	Health & Safety	<ul><li>Air/dust pollution.</li><li>Road safety.</li><li>Increased risk of veld fires.</li></ul>	-		S	Yes	-				

			l				1		
			Noise levels	• The generation of noise as a result of construction vehicles, the use of machinery such as drills, excavators and people working on the site.	_		S	Yes	-
			Tourism industry	• Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the construction activities might will not an impact on tourism in the area.	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
			Heritage resources	<ul> <li>Removal or destruction of archaeological and/or paleontological sites.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of buildings, structures, places and equipment of cultural significance.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of graves, cemeteries and burial grounds.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
Activity 15:"The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more, of indigenous	Site clearing and preparation Areas earmarked for prospecting will need to be cleared, topsoil will be stockpiled separately.		Fauna & Flora	<ul> <li>Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural vegetation.</li> <li>Loss of sensitive species.</li> <li>Loss or fragmentation of habitats.</li> </ul>	-		М	Yes	-
vegetation	This will inevitably result in the removal of indigenous vegetation		Air quality	• Air and dust pollution due to the increase of traffic.	-		М	Yes	-
Listing Notice GNR 327, Activity 20: "Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in terms of section 16 of the Mineral		ENVIRONMENT	Soil	<ul> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> <li>Loss of agricultural potential (low significance relative to agricultural potential of the site).</li> </ul>	-		М	Yes	-
and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including—		``	Geology	• It is not foreseen that the removal of indigenous vegetation will impact on the geology or vice versa.			L	Yes	-
Listing Notice GNR 325, Activity 19: "The removal and disposal of minerals contemplated in terms of		BIOPHYSICAI	Existing services infrastructur e	<ul> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at a licensed landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the local sewage plant.</li> </ul>	_		М	Yes	-
section 20 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources			Ground water	<ul><li>Pollution due to construction vehicles</li><li>Pollution due to blasting</li></ul>	-		S	Yes	-
Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— NEM:WA 59 of 2008 Residue stockpiles or			Surface water	<ul> <li>Increase in storm water run-off.</li> <li>Pollution of water sources due to soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams).</li> </ul>	-		М	Yes	-
<b>residue deposits Category</b> <b>A: (15)</b> The establishment or reclamation of a residue		/ECO	Local unemployme nt rate	<ul><li>Job creation.</li><li>Skills development.</li></ul>	+		S	N/A	-
stockpile or residue deposit resulting from activities which require a prospecting		SOCIAL/ECO NOMIC		• Potential visual impact on visual receptors in close proximity to proposed facility.			М	Yes	-

right or mining permit, in terms of the Mineral and		Traffic volumes	• Increase in construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-
PetroleumResourcesDevelopment Act, 2002 (ActNo. 28 of 2002).		Health & Safety	<ul><li>Air/dust pollution.</li><li>Road safety.</li></ul>	-		S	Yes	-
		Noise levels	• The generation of noise as a result of construction vehicles, and people working on the site.	-		S	Yes	-
		Tourism industry	• Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the construction activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
		Heritage resources	<ul> <li>Removal or destruction of archaeological and/or paleontological sites.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of buildings, structures, places and equipment of cultural significance.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of graves, cemeteries and burial grounds.</li> </ul>		-	S	Yes	-
		(	OPERATIONAL PHASE					
_	The key components of the proposed project are described below:	Fauna & Flora	<ul> <li>Fragmentation of habitats.</li> <li>Establishment and spread of declared weeds and alien invader plants (operations).</li> </ul>		-	S	Yes	-
vegetation Listing Notice GNR 327, Activity 20: "Any activity	<ul> <li><u>Supporting Infrastructure</u> - A control facility with basic services such as water and electricity will be constructed on</li> </ul>	Air quality	• Air pollution due to the mining activity, crusher plant, transport of the gravel to the designated areas and possible blasting.	-		М	Yes	-
including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in terms of section 16 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act	electricity will be constructed on the site and will have an approximate footprint 50m <sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.		<ul> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> <li>Loss of agricultural potential (low significance relative to agricultural potential of the site).</li> </ul>	-		М	Yes	-
No. 28 of 2002), including— Listing Notice GNR 325, Activity 19: "The removal and disposal of minerals contemplated in terms of section 20 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including—	<ul> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from Hay Besproeiing tar road which changes into a gravel road and existing roads will also be used on the proposed area.</li> <li><u>Fencing</u> - For health, safety and security reasons, the facility will be required to be fenced off from the surrounding farm.</li> </ul>	deology	<ul> <li>Collapsible soil.</li> <li>Seepage (shallow water table).</li> <li>Active soil (high soil heave).</li> <li>Erodible soil.</li> <li>The presence of undermined ground.</li> <li>Instability due to soluble rock.</li> <li>Steep slopes or areas of unstable natural slopes.</li> <li>Areas subject to seismic activity.</li> <li>Areas subject to flooding.</li> <li>Blasting</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	_

NEM:WA 59 of 2008		Existing	• Generation of waste that need to be					
Residue stockpiles or		services	accommodated at a licensed landfill site.					
residue deposits		infrastructur	• Generation of sewage that need to be					
Category A: (15) The		e	accommodated by the municipal			М	Yes	-
establishment or			sewerage system and the local sewage					
reclamation of a residue			plant.					
stockpile or residue deposit			• Increased consumption of water.					
resulting from activities		Ground	• Leakage of hazardous materials. The					
which require a prospecting		water	machinery on site require oils and fuel to			т	Vec	
right or mining permit, in			function. Leakage of these oils and fuels	-		L	Yes	-
terms of the Mineral and			can contaminate water supplies.					
Petroleum Resources		Surface	• Increase in storm water runoff. The					
Development Act, 2002 (Act		water	development will potentially result in an					
No. 28 of 2002).			increase in storm water run-off that needs					
			to be managed to prevent soil erosion.					
			• Destruction of watercourses			L	Yes	_
			(pans/dams/streams).			Ľ	105	_
			• Leakage of hazardous materials. The					
			machinery on site require oils and fuel to					
			function. Leakage of these oils and fuels					
			can contaminate water supplies.					
		Local				-		
		unemployme	Skills development.	+		L	Yes	-
		nt rate						
		Visual	• The proposed portions are used for					
	Ę.	landscape	livestock grazing which will still take			т	Yes	
	E		place simultaneously with the prospecting activity, however this			L	168	-
	WNN NN		depends on the location of the activity.					
	ENVIRONMENT	Traffic	1 3					
		volumes	• Increase in vehicles collecting gravel for	-		S	Yes	-
			distribution.					
	IC	Health &	• Air/dust pollution.			S	Vec	
	WO	Safety	• Road safety.			S	Yes	-
	ECONOMIC	Noise levels	• The proposed development will result in					
			noise pollution during the operational			М	Yes	-
			phase.					
	SOCIAL/	Tourism	• Since there are no tourism facilities in					
		industry	close proximity to the site, the operational			<b>NT</b> / A		
	03	_	activities will not have an impact on	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
			tourism in the area.					
		Heritage	• It is not foreseen that the proposed					
		resources	activity will impact on heritage resources			S	Yes	-
			or vice versa.					
		DEC	OMMISSIONING PHASE					
-	Mine closure	Fauna & Flora	• Re-vegetation of exposed soil surfaces to		+	L	Yes	_
	ЩС	Flora	ensure no erosion in these areas.			1	100	

During the mine closure the Mine		Air quality	• Air pollution due to the increase of traffic					
and its associated infrastructure		···· quality	of construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-
will be dismantled.		Soil	Backfilling of all voids	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	_
Rehabilitation of biophysical		Coology	<ul><li>Placing of topsoil on backfill</li><li>It is not foreseen that the</li></ul>		,	,	,	
environment		Geology	• It is not foreseen that the decommissioning phase will impact on		N/A	N/A	N/A	_
The biophysical environment will be			the geology of the site or vice versa.					
rehabilitated.		Existing	• Generation of waste that need to be					
		services	accommodated at the local landfill site.					
		infrastructur e	• Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the municipal			S	Yes	_
		C	sewerage system and the local sewage			0	105	
			plant.					
			Increase in construction vehicles.					
		Ground water	• Pollution due to construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-
		Surface	Increase in storm water run-off.					
		water	• Pollution of water sources due to soil			S	Ver	
			<ul><li>erosion.</li><li>Destruction of watercourses</li></ul>	-		S	Yes	-
			(pans/dams/streams).					
		Local						
		unemployme nt rate	• Loss of employment.	-		L	Yes	-
		Visual	Potential visual impact on visual					
		landscape	receptors in close proximity to proposed facility.	-		S	Yes	-
	Ţ	Traffic	Increase in construction vehicles.	_		S	Yes	_
	MEL	volumes				~	100	
	INC	Health & Safety	<ul><li>Air/dust pollution.</li><li>Road safety.</li></ul>					
	ENVIRONMENT	builty	<ul><li>Increased crime levels. The presence of</li></ul>					
	EN		mine workers on the site may increase			S	Yes	-
			security risks associated with an increase					
	IOM		in crime levels as a result of influx of					
	SOCIAL/ECONOMIC	Noise levels	<ul><li>people in the rural area.</li><li>The generation of noise as a result of</li></ul>					
	/EC		construction vehicles, the use of				\$7	
	IAL		machinery and people working on the	_		S	Yes	-
	0C		site.					
	S	Tourism industry	• Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the					
		muusuy	decommissioning activities will not have		N/A	N/A	N/A	-
			an impact on tourism in the area.					
		Heritage	• It is not foreseen that the					
		resources	decommissioning phase will impact on	-		S	Yes	-
			any heritage resources.					

(N/A) No impact (+) Positive Impact (-) Negative Impact (S) Short Term (M) Medium Term (L) Long Term

#### J. AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT IMPACT AND RISK, INCLUDING—

- (i) cumulative impacts;
- (ii) the nature, significance and consequences of the impact and risk;
- (iii) the extent and duration of the impact and risk;
- (iv) the probability of the impact and risk occurring;
- (v) the degree to which the impact and risk can be reversed;
- (vi) the degree to which the impact and risk may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
- (vii) the degree to which the impact and risk can be mitigated;

#### Significance of potential impacts

The following sections present the outcome of the significance rating exercise. The results suggest that almost none of the key issues identified as part of the EIR process had a negative high environmental significance. Instead the overall score indicate a low environmental significance score.

#### **INITIAL CLEARANCE AND SITE PREPARATION PHASE**

**Direct impacts:** During this phase minor negative impacts are foreseen over the short term. The latter refers to a period of weeks. The site preparation may result in the loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural fauna and flora, loss or fragmentation of habitats, soil erosion, hydrology, and temporary noise disturbance, generation of waste, visual intrusions, increase in heavy vehicle traffic, and risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure, and increased risk of veld fires. The abovementioned impacts are discussed in more detail below:

• Loss, destruction or fragmentation of indigenous natural fauna and flora:

According to the specialist study, Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report, conducted by Mpho Ramalivhana the dominating land-use on site is mining (buildings, plant infrastructure, existing ramps (for mining), stockpiles, offices, various mining equipment, open trenches, existing roads), also reservoirs, worker accommodation, landing strip, tracks and hiking trails.

Three vegetation communities were identified during the site assessment. These were recognised based on physiognomy, moisture regime, and species composition and disturbance characteristics. Vegetation communities' area:

- Mined/disturbed area;
- Senegalia mellifera shrubland, and
- Vachellia karoo dominated riparian woodland

However, it should be noted that the Vachellia karoo dominated riparian woodland community is not on the proposed area.

Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural fauna and flora	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative

Extent	Local (1)	Local (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Possible (2)
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of	Marginal loss of
	resource (3)	resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impa	acts (3)
Significance	Negative high (51)	Negative low (24)
Can impacts be mitigated?	If the development is app	
	ensure that no mammalia	-
	trapped, hunted or kille	-
	approved, every effort sh	
	the footprint to the bi	
	development and have	
	effects on the surroundi	-
	provides numerous mitig	ation measures – refer to
	section (f) of the EMPr.	
	The potential impacts as and loss of farmland mitigated. The aspects include: • The site should b	should be effectively
	<ul> <li>commencement of control</li> <li>The footprint associated related activities (according platforms, workshop)</li> </ul>	-
	• An Environmental should be appoin	, ,
	activities, such as a construction platform	by construction related ccess roads on the site, ns, workshop area etc., ted at the end of the
	programme should be reference for the of Specifications for	n of a rehabilitation e included in the terms of contractor/s appointed. the rehabilitation are the EMPr – section (f) of

	The implementation of the Delethility of
•	The implementation of the Rehabilitation
	Programme should be monitored by the ECO.
Sp	<u>ecialist (Mpho Ramalivhana) mitigation</u>
<u>m</u>	easures
•	Supervision by an ecologist to ensure success
	of the rescue operation
•	Place drilling holes away from any red listed
	and/or protected plant species
•	Use already available farm roads to avoid
	trampling red listed plant species
•	Due to the sensitivity of the areas it is advised
	that areas designated for vegetation clearing
	should be identified and visibly marked off
	and also approved as part of final drilling map
•	Vegetation clearing areas should be kept to a
	minimum and restricted to the proposed
	drilling sites.
•	Exposed areas should be rehabilitated with
	indigenous plants to the project area as soon
	as construction is finished.
•	Do not disturb nests, breeding sites or young
	ones. Do not attempt to kill or capture snakes
	unless directly threatening the safety of
	employees.
•	Dogs or other pets are not allowed to the
	worksite as they are threats to the natural
	wild animal
•	A low speed limit should be enforced on site
	to reduce wild animal-vehicle collisions
•	No animals should be intentionally killed or
	destroyed and poaching and hunting should
	not be permitted on the site.
•	Severe contractual fines must be imposed
	and immediate dismissal on any contract
	employee who is found attempting to snare or
	otherwise harms remaining faunal species.
	Hunting weapons are prohibited on site.
•	
•	Contract employees must be educated about
	the value of wild animals and the importance
	of their conservation.
•	The ECO must conduct regular site
	inspections of removing any snares or traps
	that have been erected.
•	Employees and contractors should be made
	aware of the presence of, and rules regarding,
	1

<ul> <li>flora and fauna through suitable induction training and on-site signage.</li> <li>Ensure that the colours used to paint the buildings including the roof are blending to the environment</li> </ul>
--

• <u>Loss destruction or fragmentation of habitats</u> – It is noted that the proposed prospecting site is mostly covered in natural vegetation. Faunal species will primarily be affected by the overall loss of habitat; however, this will be low since the prospecting right is without bulk sampling.

Loss or fragmentation of habitats	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)	
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of	Marginal loss of	
	resource (2)	resource (2)	
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impa		
Significance Can impacts be mitigated?	Negative medium (39)		
	Exotic and invasive plant species should not be allowed to establish, if the development is approved. Where exotic and invasive plant species are found at the site continuous eradication should take place. If the development is approved, every effort should be made to confine the footprint to the blocks allocated for development – section (f) of the EMPr also provides numerous mitigation measures related to fauna and flora.		
	<ul><li>unless directly thre employees.</li><li>Dogs or other pets</li></ul>	breeding sites or young to kill or capture snakes atening the safety of are not allowed to the areats to the natural wild ald be enforced on site to	

<ul> <li>No animals should be intentionally killed or destroyed and poaching and hunting should not be permitted on the site.</li> <li>Severe contractual fines must be imposed and immediate dismissal on any contract employee who is found attempting to snare or otherwise harms remaining faunal species.</li> <li>Hunting weapons are prohibited on site.</li> <li>Contract employees must be educated about the value of wild animals and the importance of their conservation.</li> <li>The ECO must conduct regular site inspections of removing any snares or traps that have been erected.</li> <li>Employees and contractors should be made</li> </ul>
aware of the presence of, and rules regarding, flora and fauna through suitable induction training and on-site signage.
• Ensure that the colours used to paint the buildings including the roof are blending to the environment

• <u>Loss of topsoil</u> –Topsoil may be lost due to poor topsoil management (burial, erosion, etc.). The effect will be the loss of soil fertility on disturbed areas after rehabilitation. This will result in potential grazing and cultivation being lost. However, this application is only for a prospecting right without bulk sampling, only drilling and pitting will take place.

Loss of topsoil	Pre-mitigation	Post mitigation
	impact rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Long term (3)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible
		(1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of	No loss of resource (1)
	resource (3)	
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impacts (3)	
Significance	Negative medium (45)	Negative low (16)
Can impacts be mitigated?	The following mitiga	tion or management
	measures are provided:	
	• If an activity will	mechanically disturb
	below surface in	any way, then any
	available topsoil s	hould first be stripped

<ul> <li>from the entire surface and stockpiled for re-spreading during rehabilitation.</li> <li>Topsoil stockpiles must be conserved against losses through erosion by establishing vegetation cover on them.</li> <li>Dispose of all subsurface spoils from excavations where they will not impact on undisturbed land.</li> <li>During rehabilitation, the stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread over the entire disturbed surface.</li> <li>Erosion must be controlled where necessary on top soiled areas.</li> <li>Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for constructional purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below.</li> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of each area.</li> <li>Record the date of topsoil stripping.</li> <li>Record the date of cessation of constructional (or operational) activities at the particular site.</li> <li>Photograph the area on cessation of constructional activities.</li> <li>Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil.</li> <li>Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress of restoration over time.</li> </ul>
Specialist (Mpho Ramalivhana) mitigation
measures

• <u>Soil erosion</u> – Soil erosion due to alteration of the land surface run-off characteristics. Alteration of run-off characteristics may be caused by construction related land surface disturbance, vegetation removal and the establishment of roads. Erosion will cause loss and deterioration of soil resources. This will result in grazing and cultivation potential being lost.

Soil erosion	Pre-mitigation	Post mitigation
Son erosion	impact rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Long term (2)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Party reversable (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal (2)	Marginal (2)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative in	npact (2).
Significance	Negative Medium	Negative low (20)
	(36)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	<ul> <li>measures are proveffective system of rules</li> <li>is required, that disseminates rune hardened surfaces a down slope erosion.</li> <li>Monitor the area rainfall events to de may be initiated a modifying the soil</li> </ul>	ation or management vided: Implement an un-off control, where it collects and safely off water from all and prevents potential regularly after larger termine where erosion and then mitigate by micro-topography and erosion control efforts
	inspects the effective control system and s	site inspection in mance reporting that eness of the run-off pecifically records the n on site or downstream the EMPr

 <u>Temporary noise disturbance</u> - Preparation activities will result in the generation of noise over a period of months. Sources of noise are likely to include vehicles, the use of machinery such as back actors and people working on the site. The noise impact is unlikely to be significant; but activities should be limited to normal working days and hours (6:00 - 18:00).

Temporary noise disturbance	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Medium term (1)	Medium term (1)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Completely	Completely	
	reversible (1)	reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource	No loss of resource	
	(1)	(1)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2).		
Significance	Negative low (20)	Negative low (9)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to noise		
	pollution are include	d in section (f) of the	
	EMPr.		

• <u>Generation of waste - general waste, construction waste, sewage and grey water</u> - The workers on site are likely to generate general waste such as food wastes, packaging, bottles, etc. The applicant will need to ensure that general waste is appropriately disposed of i.e. taken to the nearest licensed landfill. Sufficient ablution facilities will have to be provided, in the form of portable/VIP toilets. No pit latrines, French drain systems or soak away systems shall be allowed.

Generation of waste	Pre-mitigation	Post mitigation	
	impact rating	impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local/district (2)	Local/district (2)	
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Low (1)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource	No loss of resource	
	(1)	(1)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2) - An additional		
	demand for landfill s	space could result in	
	significant cumulativ	e impacts if services	
	become unstable or unavailable, which in		
	turn would negatively impact on the local		
	community. If general waste is left on site		
	livestock could mist	akenly eat it, which	
	might in turn harm or kill them.		
Significance	Negative low (12)	Negative low (11)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, it is therefore	important that all	
	management action	ns and mitigation	
	measures included in	section (f) of the EMPr	
	are implemented.		

<u>Impacts on heritage objects</u> – According to the Phase 1 HIA conducted by J.A. van Schalkwyk, during the physical survey, no sites, features or objects of cultural significance were identified.

- Chance finds: Stone Age artefacts, mostly dating to the Middle Stone Age occur in significant numbers all in parts of the study area. In some areas, on the hills closer to the river, the density of artefacts exceeds more than 3/2m2, diminishing to 1/10m2 in the more sandy regions. These are mostly made from banded iron stone and iron rich chert. Cores, flakes and tools are found. The tools are very rough and informal and only a few that can be described as typical were identified. As it is surface material and has already been disturbed by diamond prospecting activities, it is viewed to have low significance Grade 4-C.
- 7.3.1: Old farmstead consisting of a house and some dilapidated outbuildings. The houses consist of two gable-roofed structures that were joined end-to-end. A small porch was added to one section. The house was built with concrete blocks and has a corrugated iron roof. It is evaluated to have high significance Grade 4-A.

### Impact assessment and proposed mitigation measures

Impact analysis of cultural heritage resources under threat of the proposed development, is based on the present understanding of the development:

	IDENTIFIED HERITAGE RESOURCES				
Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating	Impact rating: Before/After mitigation	Proposed mitigation (Refer to definitions in Section 12.3)
	EIA318: Stone Age material				
Chance finds	Stone Age tools	Section 35	Low significance Grade 4-C	10 4	(5) No further action required.

IDENTIFIED HERITAGE RESOURCES					
Site No.	Site type	NHRA category	Field rating	Impact rating: Before/After mitigation	Proposed mitigation (Refer to definitions in Section 12.3)
	Historic house				
7.3.1	Historic structures	Section 35	High significance Grade 4-A	60 27	(1) Avoidance/Preserve; (2) Archaeological investigation

Impacts on heritage objects	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Permanent (4)	Permanent (4)
Magnitude	High (3)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Irreversible (4)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Complete loss of	No loss of resource (1)
	resources (4)	

Cumulative impact	The impact would result in Medium cumulative	
1	impact (3). Loss of information regarding early	
	settlement in the region.	
Significance	Negative medium (57) Negative low (16)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	If archaeological sites or graves are exposed during construction work, it should immediately be reported to a heritage practitioner so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made. Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.	
	<ul> <li>According to the Phase 1 HIA the following mitigation measures are proposed:</li> <li>Chance finds: Stone Age material</li> <li>(5) No further action required: This is applicable only where sites or features have been rated to be of such low significance that it does not warrant further documentation, as it is viewed to be fully documented after inclusion in this report.</li> <li>Site 7.3.1: Historic house <ul> <li>(1) Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to be the primary form of mitigation and applies where any type of development occurs within a formally protected or significant or sensitive heritage context and is likely to have a high negative impact; or, alternatively;</li> <li>(2) Archaeological investigation: This is appropriate where development occurs in a context of heritage significance and where the impact is such that it can be mitigated. Mitigation is to excavate the site by archaeological techniques, document the site (map and photograph) and analyse the recovered material to acceptable standards.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Conditions for inclusion in the environmental authorisation:	
	<ul> <li>If the identified structure is to be demolished, it must be fully documented – mapped, photographed and described – beforehand.</li> <li>The Palaeontological Sensitivity Map (SAHRIS) indicate that the study area has moderate sensitivity of fossil remains to be found and therefore a desktop palaeontological study of the site is required.</li> </ul>	

• Should archaeological sites or graves be exposed		
	in other areas during construction work, it must	
	immediately be reported to a heritage	
	practitioner so that an investigation and	
evaluation of the finds can be made.		

**Indirect impacts:** The nuisance aspects generally associated with the installation of infrastructure or ground preparation will also be applicable to this development, which relates primarily to the increase in vehicle traffic associated with prospecting practices, the influx of job seekers to the area, risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure, and increased risk of veld fires.

• <u>Increase in vehicle traffic</u> – The movement of heavy vehicles have the potential to damage local farm roads and create dust and safety impacts for other road users in the area. Since the application is for a prospecting right without bulk sampling, only drilling and pitting sampling will take place. Access will be obtained from Hay Besproeiing tar road which changes into a gravel road. The volume of traffic along this road is low and the movement of heavy vehicles along this road is likely to damage the road surface and impact on other road users.

Increase in vehicle traffic	Pre-mitigation impact	Post mitigation	
increase in venicie trainc	rating	impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Low (1)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely	
		reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource	
resources		(1)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2).	If damage to roads is	
	not repaired, then this will affect the farming		
	activities in the area and result in higher		
	maintenance costs for vehicles of local farmers and		
	other road users. The costs will be borne by road		
	users who were no responsible for the damage.		
Significance	Negative Low (10)	Negative low (9)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	The potential impacts as	sociated with heavy	
	vehicles can be effectively mitigated. The mitigation		
	measures include:		
	• The contractor must of	ensure that damage	
	caused by construction on the off-gravel roads.		
	The costs associated with the repair must be		
	borne by the contractor;		

<ul> <li>Dust suppression measures must be implemented for heavy vehicles such as wetting of gravel roads on a regular basis and ensuring that vehicles used to transport sand and building materials are fitted with tarpaulins or covers;</li> <li>All vehicles must be road-worthy and drivers must be qualified and made aware of the</li> </ul>
potential road safety issues and need for strict speed limits.
Also refer section (f) of the EMPr. For mitigation measures related to traffic.

• <u>Risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure</u> - The presence on and movement of workers on and off the site poses a potential safety threat to local famer's, farm workers and the communities in the vicinity of the site. In addition, farm infrastructure, such as fences and gates, may be damaged and stock losses may also result from gates being left open and/or fences being damaged or stock theft linked either directly or indirectly to the presence of farm workers on the site.

Risk to safety, livestock and	Pre-mitigation impact	Post mitigation
farm infrastructure	rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative effects (2), provided losses are	
	compensated for.	
Significance	Negative low (22)	Negative low (8)
Can impacts be mitigated?	Key mitigation measures include:	
	<ul> <li>an agreement with the area whereby damage during the construction compensated for. The signed before the commences;</li> <li>The construction area</li> </ul>	a should be fenced off imencement of the

construction workers on the site should be
confined to the fenced off area;
Contractors appointed by Okapi Diamonds
(Pty) Ltd should provide daily transport for low and semi-skilled workers to and from the site. This would reduce the potential risk of trespassing on the remainder of the farm and
adjacent properties;
Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd should hold
contractors liable for compensating farmers in full for any stock losses and/or damage to farm infrastructure that can be linked to construction workers. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct to be signed between the proponent, the contractors and neighbouring landowners. The agreement should also cover loses and costs associated with fires caused by construction workers or construction related activities (see below);
The Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) should outline procedures for managing and storing waste on site, specifically plastic waste that poses a threat to livestock if ingested;
Contractors appointed Okapi Diamonds
(Pty) Ltd must ensure that all workers are
informed at the outset of the construction
phase of the conditions contained on the
Code of Conduct, specifically consequences
of stock theft and trespassing on adjacent farms.
Contractors appointed by <b>Okapi Diamonds</b>
<ul> <li>(Pty) Ltd must ensure that construction workers who are found guilty of trespassing, stealing livestock and/or damaging farm infrastructure are dismissed and charged. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct. All dismissals must be in accordance with South African labour legislation;</li> <li>The housing of construction workers on the site should be strictly limited to security</li> </ul>

• <u>Increased risk of veld fires</u> - The presence of construction workers and constructionrelated activities on the site poses an increased risk of grass fires that could in turn pose a threat to livestock, crops, wildlife, farmsteads and the communities in the area. In the process, infrastructure may also be damaged or destroyed and human lives threatened. The potential risk of grass fires was heightened by the windy conditions in the area, especially during the dry, windy winter months from May to October. Firefighting equipment should be provided on site during the construction phase.

Increased risk of veld fires	Pre-mitigation impact	Post mitigation
Status (positivo on posstivo)	rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative) Extent	Negative	Negative
	Region (3)	Local (2)
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Very high (4)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of	Significant loss of	0
resources	resource (3)	resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Negligible cumulative effe	cts (1), provided losses
	are compensated for.	
Significance	Negative high (64)	Negative low (22)
Can impacts be mitigated?	The mitigation measures in	nclude:
	<ul> <li>perimeter of the commencement of the commencement of the contractor should ensure site for cooking or he except in designated ar</li> <li>Contractor to ensure the contractor to ensure the</li></ul>	re that open fires on the eating are not allowed
	<ul> <li>confined to areas when been reduced. Measured fires include avoiding conditions when the rist this regard special care the high risk dry, windy</li> <li>Contractor to provide equipment on-site, in vehicle;</li> <li>Contractor to provide</li> </ul>	e adequate firefighting cluding a fire fighting fire-fighting training to
		taff; with the exception of ommodated on site over

farmers and local authorities.
--------------------------------

### **OPERATIONAL PHASE**

**Direct impacts:** During the operational phase the study area will serve as a prospecting area and the impacts are generally associated with soil erosion, change in land use, impacts associated with the, increase in storm water runoff, increased consumption of water, visual intrusion, the generation of general waste, leakage of hazardous materials, and the change in the sense of place. The operational phase will also have a direct positive impact through the provision of permanent employment opportunities and facilitating a positive economic growth. The abovementioned impacts are discussed in more detail below:

• <u>Soil erosion</u> – There is a low to no risk factor for soil erosion for drilling and pitting. The conditions of the EMP will be adhered to throughout the prospecting operation and commitment to rehabilitation is of paramount importance in order to obtain a closure certificate from DMR.

Soil erosion	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible
		(1)
Irreplaceable loss of	Marginal loss of resource	No loss of resource (1)
resources	(2)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative effects (2), should these impacts	
	occur, there will be a cumulative impact on the air	
	and water resources in th	e study area in terms of
	pollution.	
Significance	Negative Low (24) Negative Low (8)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, to avoid soil erosion it will be a good practice to	
	not remove all the vegetation at once but to only	
	clear the area as it becomes necessary and to	
	implement concurrent rehabilitation.	

<ul> <li>The following mitigation or management measures are provided: Implement an effective system of run-off control, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.</li> <li>Monitor the area regularly after larger rainfall events to determine where erosion may be initiated and then mitigate by modifying the soil micro-topography and revegetation or soil erosion control efforts accordingly</li> </ul>
Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.

• <u>Change in land-use</u> – According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the dominating land-use on site is mining (buildings, plant infrastructure, existing ramps (for mining), stockpiles, offices, various mining equipment, open trenches, existing roads), also reservoirs, worker accommodation, landing strip, tracks and hiking trails.

Change in land use	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or	Negative	Negative
negative)		
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Low (1)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of	Marginal loss of resource	Marginal loss of
resources	(2)	resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative effects (2)	
Significance	Negative low (11)Negative low (11)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	The proponent should establish a Rehabilitation Fund to be used to rehabilitate the area once the proposed facility has been decommissioned. The fund should be funded by revenue generated during the operational phase of the project. The motivation for the establishment of a Rehabilitation Fund is based on the experience in the mining sector where many mines on closure have not set aside sufficient funds for closure and decommissioning.	
	Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.	

• <u>Generation of alternative land use income</u> – Income generated through the potential prospecting of the minerals applied for will provide the farming enterprise with increased cash flow and rural livelihood, and thereby improve the financial sustainability of farming on site.

Generation of alternative land	Pre-mitigation	Post mitigation
use income	impact rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Positive	Positive
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Local (2)
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Completely reversible	Completely reversible
	(1)	(1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resources	No loss of resources
	(1)	(1)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2).	
Significance	Positive Low (24)	Positive Low (26)
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation required	

• <u>Increase in storm water runoff</u> – The development will unlikely result in an increase in storm water run-off that needs to be managed to prevent soil erosion, since no vegetation will be cleared.

Increase in storm water	Pre-mitigation impact	Post mitigation
runoff	rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of	No loss of resource (1)
	resource (2)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2) - Should these impacts	
	occur, there will be cumulative impacts on the	
	wider area.	
Significance	Negative low (22)	Negative low (9)
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes. It is therefore important that all management	
	actions and mitigation measures included in	
	section (f) of the EMPr. are implemented to ensure	
	that these impacts do not occur	

• <u>Increased consumption of water</u> – Additional water requirements related to the portable water supply for employees and workers. Water will also be used for dust suppression.

Increased consumption	<b>Pre-mitigation impact</b>	Post mitigation impact	
of water	rating	rating	
Status (positive or	Negative	Negative	
negative)			
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)	
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)	
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Irreversible (4)	
Irreplaceable loss of	Marginal loss of	Marginal loss of resources	
resources	resources (2)	(2)	
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impacts (3) - An additional		
	demand on water sources	could result in a significant	
	cumulative impact with re	egards to the availability of	
	water.		
Significance	Negative medium (32)	Negative medium (32)	
Can impacts be	Yes, management actions and mitigation measures		
mitigated?	related to the use of water are included in section (f) of		
	the EMPr.		

• <u>Generation of waste</u> –Workers will be present on site from 6:00 – 18:00, Monday to Saturday. Sources of general waste will be waste food, packaging, paper, etc. General waste will be stored on the site and removed on a weekly basis.

Generation of waste	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Low (1)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)	
Irreplaceable loss of	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)	
resources			
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3) - An additional demand for landfill space could result in significant cumulative impacts with regards to the availability of landfill space. If general waste is left on site livestock could mistakenly eat it, which might in turn harm or kill them.		
Significance	Negative low (14)	Negative low (14)	

Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes,	management	actions	related	to	waste
	management are included in section (f) of the EMPr.		EMPr.			

• <u>Leakage of hazardous materials</u> - The proposed prospecting activity will make use of machinery that use fuel and oil. Leakage of these oils and fuel can contaminate water supplies and must be prevented by constructing oil and diesel permeable bunds to ensure that any spills are suitably attenuated and not released into the environment.

Leakage of hazardous	<b>Pre-mitigation impact</b>	Post mitigation	
materials	rating	impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Short term (1)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)	
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of	Significant loss of	Marginal loss of	
resources	resource (3)	resource (2)	
Cumulative impact	The impact would resu	lt in negligible to no	
	cumulative effects (1)		
Significance	Negative low (22)	Negative low (14)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes. It is therefore important that all management		
	actions and mitigation measures included in		
	section (f) of EMPr are implemented to ensure that		
	these impacts do not occur.		

• <u>Noise disturbance</u> - Prospecting activities will result in the generation of noise over a period of 2-3 years. Sources of noise are likely to include vehicles, the use of machinery such as drills and people working on the site; but prospecting activities should be limited to normal working days and some Saturdays and hours (6:00 – 18:00).

Temporary noise	Pre-mitigation impact	Post mitigation
disturbance	rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (1)	Medium term (1)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely
		reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource
resources		(1)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2).	
Significance	Negative low (20)Negative low (9)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to noise pollution	
	are included in section (f) of the EMPr.	

*Indirect impacts:* The operational phase will have an indirect negative impact through the change in the sense of place and an indirect positive impact through the provision of additional electrical infrastructure.

• <u>Potential impact on tourism</u> – There are no tourist facilities in close proximity to the proposed area.

Potential impacts on tourism	Pre-mitigation	Post mitigation
<b>_ _</b>	impact rating	impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Unlikely (1)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Low (1)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely	Completely
	reversible (1)	reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	N/A	N/A
Cumulative impact	N/A	
Significance	Negative low (6)	Negative low (6)
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation required	

### DECOMMISIONING PHASE (MINE CLOSURE AND REHABILITATION)

**Direct impacts:** Typically, the major social impacts associated with the decommissioning phase are linked to the loss of jobs and associated income. This has implications for the households who are directly affected, the communities within which they live. If infrastructures are removed after a 3/5 year period, the site will be returned to its natural state. Therefore, the physical environment will benefit from the closure of the prospecting area.

• <u>Rehabilitation of the physical environment</u> – The physical environment will benefit from the closure of the prospecting area. There is a slight chance to restore the site to its natural state, however rehabilitation will be done concurrently with all activities

Rehabilitation of the physical environment	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Positive	Positive
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)
Magnitude	High (3)	High (3)
Reversibility	N/A	N/A
Irreplaceable loss of resources	N/A	N/A

Cumulative impact	The impact would re cumulative effects (2	esult in negligible to no l)	
Significance	Positive low (27) Positive low (27)		
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation measu	No mitigation measures required.	

• <u>Loss of employment</u> - The decommissioning of the facility has the potential to have a negative social impact on the local community.

Loss of employment	Pre-mitigation	Post mitigation	
	impact rating	impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (1)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)	
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)	
Cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no		
	cumulative effects (1)		
Significance	Negative low (20)	Negative low (18)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	The following mitiga	ation measures are	
	recommended:		
	• All structures and in	frastructure associated	
	with the proposed	l facility should be	
	dismantled and transported off-site on		
	decommissioning;		
	• Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd should establish		
	an Environmental Rehabilitation Trust		
	Fund to cover the costs of decommissioning		
	and rehabilitation of	disturbed areas.	

**Indirect impacts:** No indirect impacts are anticipated from the decommissioning phase of the proposed development.

Proposed management measures relevant to the proposed mining operations as compiled by Me. Liezl Landman for the purpose of Watercourse Delineation and Ecological Impact Assessment Report

Impact	Source of Impact	<b>Recommended Mitigation Measures</b>
Alteration of the flow regime of the watercourse	<ul> <li>Construction:</li> <li>Infrastructure development within watercourses</li> <li>Removal and disturbance of watercourse habitat and vegetation</li> <li>Habitat fragmentation</li> <li>Impoundments within the watercourse</li> <li>Lack of adequate rehabilitation resulting in colonization by invasive plants</li> </ul> Operational: <ul> <li>Excavation from the watercourses</li> <li>Clearing of vegetation</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> Decommissioning: <ul> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Any activities that take place within 32 meters of a wetland or watercourse or the 1:100 year flood lines will require authorisation in terms of the relevant regulations of NEMA, however as far as possible infrastructure should be placed outside of buffer lines.</li> <li>Demarcate the watercourse areas and buffer zones to limit disturbance, clearly mark these areas as no-go areas.</li> <li>Where construction occurs in the demarcated watercourse and buffer areas, additional precautions should be implemented to minimise watercourse loss.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the revegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</li> <li>Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and take immediate corrective action where needed.</li> </ul>

		<ul> <li>A sensitivity map has been developed for the study area, indicating the drainage lines and riparian systems, and their relevant buffer zones. It is recommended that this sensitivity map be considered during all phases of the development and with special mentioning of the planning of infrastructure, in order to aid in the conservation of and minimise impact on the riparian and aquatic habitat and resources within the study site.</li> <li>Any areas where bank failure is observed, due to the prospecting impacts, should be immediately repaired.</li> <li>As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> <li>Operational phase activities should not take place within watercourses or buffer zones.</li> <li>The duration of impacts on the drainage line should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> </ul>
Changing the physical structure within a water	Construction:           • Infrastructure development within	<ul> <li>Construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> <li>Other than approved and authorized structures, no other development or maintenance infrastructure is allowed</li> </ul>
resource (habitat)	<ul><li>watercourses</li><li>Loss of vegetation</li></ul>	within the delineated watercourse and riparian areas or their associated buffer zones.

Flow alteration	• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place
Erosion	throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.
	• Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season
<u>Operational:</u>	and take immediate corrective action where needed.
Excavation from the watercourses	• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or
leading to degraded river channels.	the calculated buffers.
Removal of substrate within drainage	• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on
lines and streams	flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be
<ul> <li>Clearing of vegetation – vegetation</li> </ul>	surrounded by bunds.
loss	• Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates
Loss of biodiversity	and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.
<ul> <li>Alteration and/or loss of hydrological</li> </ul>	• All maintenance within watercourses must be restricted
flow classes	to the dry season.
Vehicles driving in and through	
watercourses	Maintenance activities should not impact on rehabilitated
	or naturally vegetated areas.
Decommissioning:	• Rehabilitation should limit fragmentation and isolation of
Damage to vegetated areas	sections of the non-perennial drainage line systems.
Ineffective rehabilitation measures	• The duration of impacts on the riverine and drainage line
Vehicles driving in and through	
watercourses	ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration
	and sedimentation will take place is minimised.
	• Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian structure and
	function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the
	ongoing functionality of the larger riparian systems at
	pre-mining levels.
	• All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry
	season.
Alteration of the amount of <u>Construction:</u>	• Buffer zones should be maintained, in order to minimise
sediment entering the Vegetation clearance causing	sedimentation of the downstream areas.
water resource and sedimentation	

associated	aharra	3	Earthworks activities	• •	No stoolmiling should take place within a waters
	change	in			No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or
turbidity			• Disturbance of soil surface and runoff		the calculated buffers.
			characteristics		Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls
			• Erosion		are strictly implemented from the beginning of site
					clearing activities.
			<u>Operational:</u>		All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where
			• Excavation from the watercourses		necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to
			leading to degraded river channels.	s	stabilise the loose material.
			• Removal of substrate within drainage	• A	All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on
			lines and streams	f	flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be
			• Clearing of vegetation - vegetation	s	surrounded by bunds.
			loss	• E	Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be
			Loss of biodiversity	r	minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-
			• Alteration and/or loss of hydrological	v	vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.
			flow classes	• A	As far as possible the existing road network should be
			• Vehicles driving in and through	ι	utilised, minimising the need to develop new access
			watercourses		routes resulting in an increased impact on the local
					environment.
			Decommissioning:	• E	Erosion control measures, such as berms, must be
			Damage to vegetated areas		implemented to manage runoff from roads to prevent
			<ul> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> </ul>		erosion and pollution.
			• Vehicles driving in and through		Silt screens should be used where necessary.
			watercourses		Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of
			watercourses		construction must be implemented immediately upon
					completion of construction.
					Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian structure and
					function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the
					ongoing functionality of the larger riparian systems at
					pre-mining levels.
				-	All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry
				S	season.

		• The duration of impacts on the riverine and drainage line
		systems should be minimised as far as possible by
		ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration
		and sedimentation will take place is minimised;
		• Maintain flood capacity, particularly in areas with
		significant flood hazards.
Alteration of water quality	Construction:	All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks.
	Runoff from road surfaces	• Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to
	Discharge of sewage	prevent hydrocarbon pollution.
	• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and	• All spills should be cleaned up immediately and disposed
	hydrocarbons	of.
		• Spill kits should be readily available and easily accessible
	Operational:	throughout the site.
	• Maintenance of vehicles and	• All chemicals must be stored safely on site, outside the
	machinery	buffer areas and surrounded by bunds. Chemical storage
	Runoff from road surfaces	containers must be regularly inspected for early leak
	Discharge of sewage	detection.
	• Discharge of solvents, chemicals and	• Littering must be prevented by effective site management
	hydrocarbons	and the provision of bins.
	• Excavation from the watercourses	Provision of adequate sanitation facilities located outside
	and the release of nutrients and	of the delineated buffer zones.
	pollutants from disturbed soils	• An emergency spill procedure should be developed and
	• Removal of substrate within drainage	implemented.
	lines and streams	• No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse.
		• All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on
	Decommissioning:	flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be
	Damage to vegetated areas	surrounded by bunds.
	Ineffective rehabilitation measures	• Stockpiles must be located away from river channels and
	• Vehicles driving in and through	drainage lines.
	watercourses	č

	<ul> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re- vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.</li> </ul>
loss Operational:   Removal of watercourses  Clearing of prospecting opera  Decommissioning:  Damage to vegetat Ineffective rehability	<ul><li>disturbance on fauna and flora.</li><li>Areas of indigenous vegetation should under no circumstances be fragmented or disturbed for used as an</li></ul>

		• Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.
Loss of Aquatic Biota	<ul> <li>Construction:</li> <li>Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>Sedimentation</li> <li>Discharge of sewage</li> <li>Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Bi-annual biomonitoring of aquatic macro-invertebrates and diatoms within the riverine systems is essential.</li> <li>Refer to Mitigation Measures regarding water quality and sedimentation as listed above.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Operational:</li> <li>Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>Discharge of sewage</li> <li>Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>Removal of substrate within drainage lines and streams</li> </ul>	
Loss of Terrestrial Fauna	<ul> <li>Sedimentation</li> <li><u>Construction and Operational:</u></li> <li>Vegetation loss and disturbance -</li> </ul>	• Site clearing to take place in a phased manner (where possible) to allow for any faunal species present to move
	<ul> <li>Vegetation loss and disturbance – clearing of vegetation</li> <li>Excessive noise disturbances</li> <li>Illegal hunting</li> <li>Habitat fragmentation destruction</li> <li>Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>possible) to allow for any faultal species present to move away from the study site to the surrounding open space areas.</li> <li>Prior and during vegetation clearance any larger fauna species noted should be given the opportunity to move away from the construction machinery.</li> <li>Fauna species such as frogs and reptiles that have not moved away should be carefully and safely removed to a</li> </ul>

suitable location beyond the extent of the development
footprint by a suitably qualified ECO trained in the
handling and relocation of animals.
• Fencing should be erected around the project area to
prevent workers and members of the public from entering
the surrounding environments. This fence should have
small openings to allow wildlife to pass through.
• Waste management must be a priority and all waste must
be collected and stored adequately. It is recommended
that all waste be removed from site on a weekly basis to
prevent rodents and pests entering the site.
Should any sensitive or Red Data animal or bird species
be encountered during the construction, operation and
decommissioning activities, these should be relocated to
natural areas in the vicinity. Any sensitive fauna that are
inadvertently killed during earthmoving operations
should be preserved as museum voucher specimens.
• No hunting, trapping or killing of fauna are allowed.
• Any lizards, snakes or monitors encountered should be
allowed to escape to a suitable habitat away from
disturbance.
• General avoidance of snakes is the best policy if
encountered. Snakes should not be intentionally harmed
or killed and allowed free movement away from the area.
• Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for
extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become
trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should
contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.
• Noise must be kept to an absolute minimum at night to
minimise all possible disturbances to amphibian species
and nocturnal mammals.
1

Loss of Terrestrial Flora	<b>Construction and Operational:</b>	•	Areas that are stripped during construction and operation
	Vegetation clearance		should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation as
	• Vehicles driving through natural		soon as possible. This will also reduce the likelihood of
	vegetated areas		encroachment by alien invasive plant species.
	Habitat fragmentation and	•	Protected trees and plants shall not be removed or
	destruction		damaged without prior approval, permits or licenses from
			the relevant authority, this is especially applicable to the
			Protected Witgat (Boscia albitrunca), which were present
			on site.
Introduction and spread of	Construction:	•	Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected
alien vegetation	Clearing of vegetation		within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some
			alien and invasive species present within the study site.
	Operational:		These species should be eradicated and controlled to
	Removal of substrate within		prevent further spread beyond.
	watercourses	•	An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be
	Clearing of vegetation during		developed and implemented.
	prospecting operations	•	Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place
	• Vehicles driving in and through		throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.
	watercourses	•	Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when
			removing alien plant species.
	Decommissioning:	•	No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated
	Damage to vegetated areas		sensitive drainage lines and riparian areas during the
	Ineffective rehabilitation measures		eradication of alien and weed species.
	• Vehicles driving in and through	•	All alien vegetation in the riparian zone should be
	watercourses		removed upon completion of prospecting activities and
			reseeded with indigenous grasses as specified by a
			suitably qualified specialist (ecologist).

#### K. SUMMARY OF THE FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS OF ANY SPECIALIST REPORT

(where applicable, a summary of the findings and recommendations of any specialist report complying with Appendix 6 to these Regulations and an indication as to how these findings and recommendations have been included in the final assessment report;):-

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATI ONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT (Mark with an X where applicable)
Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report	<ul> <li>The following were concluded by the specialist:</li> <li>According to the National Threatened Ecosystem database (2011), no threatened ecosystems overlaps with the study site, however, the vulnerable classed Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation Ecosystem was identified adjacent to the study site on the southern boundary.</li> <li>According to the Northern Cape Biodiversity Sector Plan (2016), large sections of the study site overlap with CBA2. These areas are mostly covered in natural vegetation. The depressions wetland areas are classed as CBA1.</li> <li>According to the National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas Database (NFEPA, 2011), six (6) Depressions are present on site.</li> <li>Shepard's Tree (Boscia albitrunca), a Protected Tree species of South Africa, was recorded on site, along with the protected Cannon Aloe (Aloe claviflora) and Bushman's Hat (Hoodia gordonii).</li> <li>Several Alien and Invasive Vegetation Species were recorded on site.</li> <li>Two avifauna species potentially occurring on site, enjoys conservation status in the IUCN Red List, namely Ludwig's Bustard (Neotis ludwigii) and Verreaux's Eagle</li> </ul>	X

	(Aquila verreauxii). Ludwig's Bustard is also listed and protected under the	
	Threatened and Protected Species list (ToPS, 2013) which is enforceable under the	
	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004.	
	• Several species possibly occurring on site are protected under NEMBA. Although not	
	listed in the species list.	
	• All Amphibian species are of Least Concern (LC), except for the Giant Bullfrog	
	(Pyxicephalus adspersus) which is of special conservation concern and protected	
	under NEMBA.	
	• Six (6) Depression wetlands were recorded on the study site.	
	According to the Baseline Hydrogeological Investigation conducted by a qualified specialist	
	"Twenty-two (22) boreholes (LV-BH1 – BH22) were identified during field investigation	
	conducted between the 26th and 27th May 2020. Groundwater was mainly used for stock	
	watering purposes and domestic use. Irrigation water is mainly sourced from the Orange	
	River. Groundwater samples were collected from LV-BH9, LV-BH12, LV-BH13 and LV-	
	BH19. Based on elevated and non-compliant chloride, sulphate and nitrate groundwater	
	abstracted from LVBH9, LV-BH13 and LV-BH19 is not suitable for human consumption	
	without treatment.	
Baseline Hydrogeological		
Investigation	The Mining Work Programme (MWP) does not specify the depth of trenches and pits. It was	
mvestigation	assumed, based on mining on surrounding properties, that mining will be 5m deep with	
	possible maximum depth of 8m. Due to groundwater levels ranging between 10.1 and	
	26.9mbgl, measured during the borehole survey, no groundwater inflow is expected.	
	Process water will be sourced from the Orange River. Based on the laboratory analysis of	
	the Orange River abstraction point no major constituents of concern were identified. The	
	water from the Orange River is therefore suited for use during mining activities	
	The following was recommended:	

	<ul> <li>It is recommended that stormwater management and water recycling be implemented to ensure water runoff are limited to downgradient water bodies or water users;</li> <li>Based on the groundwater laboratory results, consumption of water from LV-BH9, LVBH13 and LV-BH19 is not suitable for human consumption without treatment;</li> <li>Given the low likelihood for the tailings material to impact on the groundwater, it is recommended that motivation is provided for a Type 4 Classification;</li> <li>Groundwater Monitoring should be undertaken in accordance with SANS and DWS requirements in line with the recommended schedule. LV-BH12 and BH13 are recommended to be monitored; and</li> <li>An annual compliance report should be compiled and submitted to the authorities for evaluation and comment. The monitoring network should be updated annually, and this report should be submitted annually.</li> </ul>	
Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment Conducted by J.A. van Schalkwyk	<ul> <li>Findings:</li> <li>According to the Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment conducted by Mr. J.A. van Schalkwyk, the following were findings and the recommendations on the application area</li> <li><u>Identified sites</u></li> <li>During the physical survey, no sites, features or objects of cultural significance were identified.</li> <li>Chance finds: Stone Age artefacts, mostly dating to the Middle Stone Age occur in significant numbers all in parts of the study area. In some areas, on the hills closer to the river, the density of artefacts exceeds more than 3/2m2, diminishing to 1/10m2 in the more sandy regions. These are mostly made from banded iron stone and iron rich chert. Cores, flakes and tools are found. The tools are very rough and informal and only a few that can be described as typical were identified. As it is surface material and has already been disturbed by diamond prospecting activities, it is viewed to have low significance – Grade 4-C.</li> </ul>	X

	• 7.3.1: Old farmstead consisting of a house and some dilapidated outbuildings. The houses consist of two gable-roofed structures that were joined end-to-end. A small porch was added to one section. The house was built with concrete blocks and has a corrugated iron roof. It is evaluated to have high significance – Grade 4-A.	
Palaeontological Desktop Assessment	The following are the findings of the Palaeontological Desktop Assessment, It is therefore considered that the proposed mining development is deemed appropriate and feasible and will not lead to detrimental impacts on the palaeontological resources of the area. Thus, the construction and operation of the mine may be authorised as the development footprint is not considered sensitive in terms of palaeontological resources.	
Floodline Assessment Report	According to this study, part of the 1:50 and 1:100 flood peaks extend across the farm boundaries adjacent to the river as seen on figure below	

It is recommended that the placement of infrastructure should adhere to the GN704 of the	
South African National Water Act (36 of 1998) and not be located within the 1:100- year	
Return Period flood line. This is essential for the safety of human life as well as for the	
protection of infrastructure from flood inundation and destruction.	

## L. AN ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT WHICH CONTAINS—

### (i) a summary of the key findings of the environmental impact assessment:

This section provides a summary of the assessment and conclusions drawn from the proposed prospecting area. In doing so, it draws on the information gathered as part of the environmental impact assessment process and the knowledge gained by the environmental consultant during the course of the process and presents an informed opinion on the environmental impacts associated with the proposed project. The following conclusions can be drawn for the proposed prospecting activity:

Potential impacts on biodiversity: According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana:

During site assessment, three vegetation unit were noticed on site and these are *Senegalia mellifera* Shrubland, and mined/disturbed area. The *Senegalia mellifera* Shrubland was found to having conservation status of medium to high due to the presence of protected plant species (*hoordia gordonii and Boscia albitrunca*) and also being able to provide habitat for the identified faunal species. Therefore, when choosing areas to be prospected, the applicant should take into account to avoid these species. A permit application regarding protected flora as well as the harvesting of indigenous vegetation need to be lodged with the Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation prior to any clearance of vegetation

It is recommended that the management measures stipulated in this report be included into the proposed projects official EMP and that these are assessed for efficacy during all phases of the project and adapted accordingly to ensure minimal disturbance of the study areas' ecology.

Other specific conclusions and recommendations are listed below.

- All licences must be obtained prior to mining;
- All ablution facilities must be placed far away from the water bodies including their buffer zone;
- Where possible, construction along water bodies should proceed during the dry winter months (low or zero flow periods) in order to limit the potential for erosion linked to high runoff rates;
- An alien and invasive management plan must be adhered to at all times; and
- Ensure active re-vegetation of cleared/mined areas as being important in-order to limit erosion potential.
- Where possible, mining along water bodies should proceed during the dry winter months (low or zero flow periods) in order to limit the potential for erosion linked to high runoff rates, as to prevent sedimentation on the Orange River

it is clear that the destruction of the natural habitat within the mining area is inevitable. The significance of the impacts will be affected by the success of the mitigation measures implemented and the rehabilitation programme for the mining area. > Potential impact on heritage resources:

According the Phase 1 HIA the following were identified:

During the physical survey, no sites, features or objects of cultural significance were identified.

- Chance finds: Stone Age artefacts, mostly dating to the Middle Stone Age occur in significant numbers all in parts of the study area. In some areas, on the hills closer to the river, the density of artefacts exceeds more than 3/2m2, diminishing to 1/10m2 in the more sandy regions. These are mostly made from banded iron stone and iron rich chert. Cores, flakes and tools are found. The tools are very rough and informal and only a few that can be described as typical were identified. As it is surface material and has already been disturbed by diamond prospecting activities, it is viewed to have low significance Grade 4-C.
- 7.3.1: Old farmstead consisting of a house and some dilapidated outbuildings. The houses consist of two gable-roofed structures that were joined end-to-end. A small porch was added to one section. The house was built with concrete blocks and has a corrugated iron roof. It is evaluated to have high significance – Grade 4-A.

Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should be authorised:

• From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed development be allowed to continue on acceptance of the conditions proposed below.

Conditions for inclusion in the environmental authorisation:

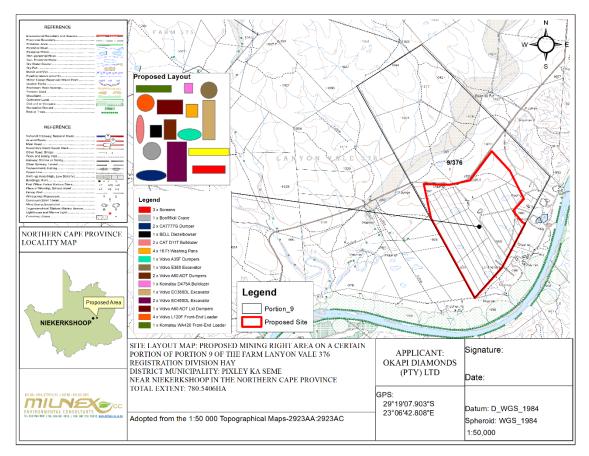
- If the identified structure is to be demolished, it must be fully documented mapped, photographed and described beforehand.
- The Palaeontological Sensitivity Map (SAHRIS) indicate that the study area has moderate sensitivity of fossil remains to be found and therefore a desktop palaeontological study of the site is required.
- Should archaeological sites or graves be exposed in other areas during construction work, it must immediately be reported to a heritage practitioner so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made.
- Potential impact on Palaeontological resources: Should fossils be exposed during construction work, it must immediately be reported to a palaeontologist so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made.
- Potential impacts on land use: According to the Ecological and Wetland Assessment Report compiled by Mpho Ramalivhana, the dominating land-use on site is mining (buildings, plant infrastructure, existing ramps (for mining), stockpiles, offices, various mining equipment, open trenches, existing roads), also reservoirs, worker accommodation, landing strip, tracks and hiking trails.

- Potential social impacts: The presence of construction workers poses a potential risk to family structures and social networks. While the presence of construction workers does not in itself constitute a social impact, the manner in which construction workers conduct themselves can impact on local communities. The most significant negative impact is associated with the disruption of existing family structures and social networks.
- Potential negative impacts: (noise, dust, soil degradation, storm water, traffic, health and safety) associated with the operation of the facility are expected to be of low-high impact, of medium terms and site specific. These can be mitigated or negated through the implementation of practical and appropriate mitigation measures.
- Positive impacts: The prospecting of Diamonds Alluvial (DA) and Diamonds General (D), without bulk sampling, may result in socio-economic benefit to the area.

All possible negative impacts and risks that have been identified in this report can be effectively mitigated and managed by implementing the migratory measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B.

(i) a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity and its associated structures and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred [site] development footprint on the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers; and

Provide a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed overall activity and its associated structures and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers.



## Figure 16: Site Plan

Refer to Site layout Map attached in Appendix 4.

# (ii) a summary of the positive and negative impacts and risks of the proposed activity and identified alternatives;

There are regional socio economic benefits due to the alluvial diamonds being prospected in the Northern Cape Province and greater knowledge is gained on the mineralogy of South Africa. All possible negative impacts and risks that have been identified in this report can be effectively mitigated and managed by implementing the mitigation measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B. Significant adverse social environmental impacts are anticipated.

### M. PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES FOR INCLUSION IN THE EMPR

Based on the assessment and where applicable the recommendations from specialist reports, the recording of proposed [impact management objectives, and the] impact management outcomes for the development for inclusion in the EMPr as well as for inclusion as conditions of authorisation.

Management objectives include:

Ensure that the prospecting activity does not cause pollution to the environment or harm to persons.

- Minimise production of waste.
- All prospecting activities must be conducted in a manner that minimises noise impact, litter, environmental degradation and health hazards i.e. injuries.
- The mine must be kept neat and tidy during waste handling to prevent unsightliness and accidents.

Expected outcomes include:

- > Minimum impacts on the environment as a result of alluvial diamond prospecting.
- > Compliance with legislative requirements.
- > Mine is neat and tidy and well managed.

### N. FINAL PROPOSED ALTERNATIVES.

(Provide an explanation for the final layout of the infrastructure and activities on the overall site as shown on the final site map together with the reasons why they are the final proposed alternatives which respond to the impact management measures, avoidance, and mitigation measures identified through the assessment)

This alternative asks the question, if there is not, from an environmental perspective, a more suitable location for the proposed activity. The remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376 are preferred due to the sites underlying alluvial diamond bearing gravel, therefore there will be no other alternative (i.e. to facilitate the movement of machinery, equipment, infrastructure).

## **O. ASPECTS FOR INCLUSION AS CONDITIONS OF AUTHORISATION.**

## (Any aspects which were conditional to the findings of the assessment either by the EAP or specialist which are to be included as conditions of authorisation;)

- > The operational activities and relevant rehabilitation of disturbed areas should be monitored against the improved EMPr and all other relevant environmental legislation.
- A copy of the EMP should be made available onsite at all times.
- ▶ Implementation of the proposed mitigation measures set out in the EMPr.

## P. DESCRIPTION OF ANY ASSUMPTIONS, UNCERTAINTIES AND GAPS IN KNOWLEDGE.

#### (Which relate to the assessment and mitigation measures proposed)

The uncertainties in results are mostly related to the availability of information, time available to gather the relevant information as well as the sometimes subjective nature of the assessment methodology. In terms of addressing the key issues the EAP is satisfied that there are no major gaps in knowledge and that the report provide sufficient information to conduct the significance rating and provide the environmental authority with sufficient information to make an informed decision.

## Q. REASONED OPINION AS TO WHETHER THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY SHOULD OR SHOULD NOT BE AUTHORISED

## (and if the opinion is that it should be authorised, any conditions that should be made in respect of that authorisation;)

### Reasons why the activity should be authorized or not.

Based on the outcomes of the prospecting activities, the possibility to encounter further Diamond Reserves were identified.

The proposed Mining area is targeted as, historically, several Diamonds (Alluvial) and Diamonds (General) occurrences are known in the area, and a number of these have been exploited in the past. There are also various alluvial diamond operations within the vicinity of the exploration area.

The option of not approving the activities will result in a significant loss of valuable information regarding the mineral status (in terms of diamonds) present on these properties. Also, the investment made in the current prospecting right will also go to waste.

### Conditions that must be included in the authorisation

- The operational activities and relevant rehabilitation of disturbed areas should be monitored against the improved EMPr and all other relevant environmental legislation.
- > A copy of the EMP should be made available onsite at all times.
- > Implementation of the proposed mitigation measures set out in the EMPr.

The EMPr should be binding on all managers and contractors operating/utilizing the site.

The applicant shall familiarize himself with the content of this document and the attached specialist studies and the requirements/conditions thereof.

#### **R. PERIOD FOR WHICH THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION IS REQUIRED.**

For a minimum of 30 years.

# S. AN UNDERTAKING UNDER OATH OR AFFIRMATION BY THE EAP IN RELATION TO:

Confirm that the undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPr and is applicable to both the Basic assessment report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

The undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPr and is applicable to both the Environmental Impact Assessment report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

I, Percy Sehaole Pr. Sci. Nat. EAPASA (2019/959) herewith confirms

- **A.** the correctness of the information provided in the reports  $\boxtimes$
- **B.** the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and I&APs ;  $\boxtimes$

- **C**. the inclusion of inputs and recommendations from the specialist reports where relevant;  $\square$  and
- the acceptability of the project in relation to the finding of the assessment D. and level of mitigation proposed;  $\boxtimes$

## Behaole.

Signature of the environmental assessment practitioner:

Milnex CC - Environmental Consultants Name of company:

09 - 04 - 2020

Date:

#### **T. FINANCIAL PROVISION**

(where applicable, details of any financial provision[s] for the rehabilitation, closure, and ongoing post decommissioning management of negative environmental impacts;)

	Applicant:         Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd           Evaluators:         Milnex CC Environmental Consultants				Ref No.: Date:	NC30/5/1/2/2/10171MR 17-04-2020	
No.	Description	Unit	A Quantity	B Master Rate	C Multiplication factor	D Weighting factor 1	E=A*B*C*D Amount (Rands)
1	Dismantling of processing plant and related structures (including overland conveyors and powerlines)	m3	0	14,05	1	1	0
2 (A)	Demolition of steel buildings and structures	m2	214,5	195,76	1	1	41990,52
2(B)	Demolition of reinforced concrete buildings and structures	m2	0	288,49	1	1	0
3	Rehabilitation of access roads	m2	7100,9	35,03	1	1	248744,527
4 (A)	Demolition and rehabilitation of electrified railway lines	m	0	340,01	1	1	0
4 (A)	Demolition and rehabilitation of non-electrified railway lines	m	0	185,46	1	1	0
5	Demolition of housing and/or administration facilities	m2	0	391,53	1	1	0
6	Opencast rehabilitation including final voids and ramps	ha	3,36	205242,16	0,04	1	27584,5463
7	Sealing of shafts adits and inclines	m3	0	105,09	1	1	0
8 (A)	Rehabilitation of overburden and spoils	ha	0,346	136828,1	1	1	47342,5226
8 (B)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (non-polluting potential)	ha	0,2	170416,93	1	1	34083,386
8(C)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation	ha	0	494971,55	1	1	0
9	Rehabilitation of subsided areas	ha	0	114572,93	1	1	0
10	General surface rehabilitation	ha	0	108390,94	1	1	0
11	River diversions	ha	0	108390,94	1	1	0
12	Fencing	m	436,4	123,64	1	1	53956,496
13	Water management	ha	0,1	41213,28	1	1	4121,328
14	2 to 3 years of maintenance and aftercare	ha	0	14424,65	1	1	0
15 (A)	Specialist study	Sum	0			1	0
15 (B)	Specialist study	Sum				1	0
					Sub Tot	al 1	457823,3259
1	Preliminary and General		54938	,79911	weighting 1	factor 2	54938,79911
2	Contingencies			4578	2,33259		45782,33259
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				Subtota	al 2	558544,46
					VAT (15	5%)	83781.67

### A. Explain how the aforesaid amount was derived.

The closure cost estimate provided above is aligned with the Guideline Document for the Evaluation of Quantum of Closure related Financial Provision Provided by a Mine, by the DMR (January, 2005). The amount was calculated by Milnex CC.

**B.** Confirm that this amount can be provided for from operating expenditure. (Confirm that the amount, is anticipated to be an operating cost and is provided for as such in the Mining work programme, Financial and Technical Competence Report or Prospecting Work Programme as the case may be).

#### Financial Guarantee

The financial guarantee for the rehabilitation for land disturbed by **Okapi Diamonds** (Pty) Ltd will be submitted

#### **Rehabilitation Fund**

**Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** will also make provision for rehabilitation during closure by establishing a rehabilitation trust.

## U. DEVIATIONS FROM THE APPROVED SCOPING REPORT AND PLAN OF STUDY.

(i) Any deviation from the methodology used in determining the significance of potential environmental impacts and risks; and

None of the methodologies approved for the scoping report were deviated

#### (ii) Motivation for the deviation.

Not applicable

## V. ANY SPECIFIC INFORMATION THAT MAY BE REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY; AND

## W. COMPLIANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTIONS 24(4)(A) AND (B) OF THE ACT

Read with Section 24 (3) (A) and (7) of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998). The EIA Report must include the:

**ii. Impact on the socio-economic conditions of any directly affected person.** (Provide the results of Investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting on any directly affected person including the landowner, lawful occupier, or, where applicable, potential beneficiaries of any land restitution claim, attach the investigation report as

**Appendix 2.19.1** and confirm that the applicable mitigation is reflected in 2.5.3; 2.11.6.and 2.12.herein).

The diamonds alluvial prospecting will not impact directly on any socio-economic aspects. Indirect socio-economic benefits are expected to be associated with the creation of employment.

iii. Impact on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act. (Provide the results of Investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999) with the exception of the national estate contemplated in section 3(2)(i)(vi) and (vii) of that Act, attach the investigation report as **Appendix 2.19.2** and confirm that the applicable mitigation is reflected in 2.5.3; 2.11.6.and 2.12.herein).

The diamonds alluvial prospecting will not impact on any heritage estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act. In terms of the National Heritage Resource Act no 25 of 1999. Heritage resources including archaeological and paleontological sites over 100 years old, graves older than 60 years, structure older than 60 years are protected. They may not be disturbed without a permit from the relevant heritage resource Authority, which means that before such sites are disturbed by development it is incumbent on the developer to ensure that a heritage impact assessment is done and the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority and SAHRA will be contacted immediately and work will stop.

According the Phase 1 HIA the following sites were identified:

During the physical survey, no sites, features or objects of cultural significance were identified.

• Chance finds: Stone Age artefacts, mostly dating to the Middle Stone Age occur in significant numbers all in parts of the study area. In some areas, on the hills closer to the river, the density of artefacts exceeds more than 3/2m2, diminishing to 1/10m2 in the more sandy regions. These are mostly made from banded iron stone and iron rich chert. Cores, flakes and tools are found. The tools are very rough and informal and only a few that can be described as typical were identified. As it is surface material and has already been disturbed by diamond prospecting activities, it is viewed to have low significance – Grade 4-C.

• 7.3.1: Old farmstead consisting of a house and some dilapidated outbuildings. The houses consist of two gable-roofed structures that were joined end-to-end. A small porch was added to one section. The house was built with concrete blocks and has a corrugated iron roof. It is evaluated to have high significance – Grade 4-A.

Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should be authorised:

• From a heritage point of view, it is recommended that the proposed development be allowed to continue on acceptance of the conditions proposed below.

Conditions for inclusion in the environmental authorisation:

• If the identified structure is to be demolished, it must be fully documented – mapped, photographed and described – beforehand.

• The Palaeontological Sensitivity Map (SAHRIS) indicate that the study area has moderate sensitivity of fossil remains to be found and therefore a desktop palaeontological study of the site is required. Should archaeological sites or graves be exposed in other areas during construction work, it must immediately be reported to a heritage practitioner so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made.

### Other matters required in terms of sections 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act.

(the EAP managing the application must provide the competent authority with detailed, written proof of an investigation as required by section 24(4)(b)(i) of the Act and motivation if no reasonable or feasible alternatives, as contemplated in sub-regulation 22(2)(h), exist. The EAP must attach such motivation as **Appendix 4**).

The remaining extent of portion 9 (Wouter) of the farm Lanyon Vale 376; Registration Division: Hay; Northern Cape Province are preferred due to the sites underlying geology and the shallowness of the diamond bearing gravel to the surface as well as site access (i.e. to facilitate the movement of machinery, equipment, infrastructure and people). The specific site has been chosen for its mineral resources thus making an alternative site selection null and void.

#### PART B

#### ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT

#### An EMPr must comply with section 24N of the Act and include-

#### A. DETAILS OF-

- (i) the EAP who prepared the EMPr; and
- (ii) the expertise of that EAP to prepare an EMPr, including a curriculum vitae;

Name of Practitioner	Qualifications	Contact details
Ms. Percy Sehaole Pr.	Master's Degree in	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925
Sci. Nat. EAPASA	Environmental Science	Fax No.: (053) 963 2009
(2019/959)		e-mail address: percy@milnex-
	Master's Degree in	<u>sa.co.za</u>
	Environmental	
	Management	
	(refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	
		Tel No.: (018) 011 1925
	Honours Degree in	Fax No.: (053) 963 2009
Lizanne Esterhuizen	Environmental Science	e-mail address: <u>lizanne@milnex-</u>
	(refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	<u>sa.co.za</u>

It is hereby confirmed that the requirements for the provision of the details and expertise of the EAP are contained in Part A, section 1(a) as required. The Curriculum Vitae for the responsible EAP is contained in **Appendix 1 and 2**.

#### **B. DESCRIPTION OF THE ASPECTS OF THE ACTIVITY**

# (a detailed description of the aspects of the activity that are covered by the EMPr as identified by the project description;)

It is hereby confirmed that the requirements to describe the aspects of the activity that are required by the EMP is already included in Part A, section 1(h).

#### C. COMPOSITE MAP

(a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that [any areas that] should be avoided, including buffers;)

Refer to Locality Map, attached as in **Appendix 4**.

#### D. A DESCRIPTION OF THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT [OBJECTIVES] OUTCOMES, INCLUDING MANAGEMENT STATEMENTS, IDENTIFYING THE IMPACTS AND RISKS THAT NEED TO BE AVOIDED, MANAGED AND MITIGATED AS IDENTIFIED THROUGH THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT PROCESS FOR ALL PHASES OF THE DEVELOPMENT INCLUDING—

i) **Determination of closure objectives.** (ensure that the closure objectives are informed by the type of environment described in 2.4 herein)

Closure objectives for the alluvial diamond mine will aim to ensure that the residual post-closure impacts be minimized and be acceptable to relevant parties. To achieve these closure objectives, the following will be implemented:

- All prospecting related infrastructure, foundations and concrete areas will be decommissioned, removed from the site and appropriately disposed of. Reclaimable structures such as metal, electrical installations or equipment will be sold for reuse or as scrap.
- All disturbed areas within the site not already vegetated will be re-vegetated with appropriate indigenous, ecologically adapted species appropriate to the area and the final land use as soon as possible after operation ceases. Progress of vegetation growth/establishment, stability and drainage/erosion will be monitored and, in the event of adverse trends being identified, corrective measures will be implemented.
- Vegetation monitoring will consider, inter alia, the establishment of perennial ground cover and infestation by alien invasive plant species. The encroachment of indigenous vegetation into the area will be used as an indication of a stable, selfsustaining vegetation cover with little risk of retrogressing to a situation where are and water pollution may occur.
- Final landforms must be resilient to perturbation and also be self-sustaining to obviate/limit further/ongoing interventions and maintenance by Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd. The remaining impacts be of an acceptable nature with minimal deterioration over time.
- The final outcome of the mine site rehabilitation would be productive systems, where required sustaining either cattle or wildlife.
- Environmental and human quality of life, including health and safety requirements in general, would not be compromised; and
- Closure is achieved in an efficient and cost-effective manner as possible and with minimum socioeconomic changes.

### E. A DESCRIPTION AND IDENTIFICATION OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES REQUIRED FOR THE ASPECTS CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH (D);]

The above goal is underpinned by more specific objectives listed below.

## 1. Upfront planning/development

To provide overall guidance and direction to closure planning and/or the implementation of progressive closure measures over the remaining over the prospecting life.

### 2. Physical stability

- To ensure that surface infrastructure and prospecting residue and/or disturbances that are present at processing plant decommissioning will be removed and/or stabilised in a manner that these will not compromise post-closure land use and be sustainable long-term landforms.
- Closure, removal and disposal of all surface infrastructure that has no beneficial post-closure use.
- Shaping and vegetating the remaining earth embankments, trenches, etc. to stabilise slopes and integrate with surrounding topography.

### 3. Environmental quality

To ensure that local environmental quality is not adversely affected by possible physical effects arising from prospecting operations and the prospecting site after closure. This will be achieved by:

- Avoiding and/or limiting the following during prospecting operations which could result in adverse effects that could not be readily addressed and/or mitigated at mine closure.
- Dust fall-out areas surrounding the prospecting site.
- Wash-off and/or mobilisation of chemically contaminated soils and sediments from the prospecting site that could have long term adverse effects on local aquatic health and/or other water uses.
- Possible shallow groundwater contamination adversely affecting the quality of the local water resource and its beneficial use.
  - Limiting the potential for dust generation on the rehabilitated prospecting site that could cause nuisance and/or health effects to surrounding landowners;
  - Limiting the possible adverse water quality and quantity effects arising from the rehabilitated prospecting site to ensure that long term beneficial use of local resources is not compromised;
  - Conducting soil clean-up/remediation to ensure that the planned land use could be implemented and maintained;

## 4. Health and safety

To limit the possible health and safety treats due to terrain hazards to humans and animals utilizing the rehabilitated prospecting site after closure by:

- Demonstrating through upfront soil testing that any resultant inorganic and organic pollution present on the site is acceptable;
- Removal of potential contaminants such as hydrocarbons and chemicals off site;
- Shaping of embankments and trenches to safe slopes and reintegrating of these into surrounding topography.
- Ensuring that the environmental quality as reflected above is achieved.

## 5. Land capability / land use

To ensure that the required land capability to achieve and support the planned land use can be achieved over the prospecting site by:

- Clean-up and reclamation of contaminated soil areas in order not to compromise the above land use planning earmarked for implementation;
- To ensure that the overall rehabilitated prospecting site is free draining
- Transferring prospecting related surface infrastructure to third parties for beneficial use after closure.

## 6. Aesthetic quality

To ensure that the rehabilitated prospecting site will display, at a minimum, an acceptable aesthetic appearance that would not compromise the planned land use by leaving behind:

• A prospecting area that is properly cleared-up with no fugitive/scattered waste piles

- Rehabilitated prospecting area that is free draining and disturbed areas that are suitably vegetated.
- Rehabilitated prospecting residues that are suitably landscaped, blending with the surrounding environment as far as possible.
- Shaped and rehabilitated terrace and hard stand areas, roughly emulating the local natural surface topography.

## 7. Landscape viability

To create a landscape that is self-sustaining and over time will evolve/converge to the desired ecosystem structure, function and composition by:

- Conducing surface profiling, with associated material movement optimisation, to obtain a landscape resembling the natural landscapes to support the succession trajectory towards a climax ecological system.
- Establishing woody patches and create "rough and loose" areas for pioneer specie establishment around the respective patches.
- Establishing pioneer species as follows:
- Collected and prepared seeds for broad casting;
- Seedlings grown on on-site nursery;
- Cuttings collected from surrounding veld areas;
- Conducting rehabilitation monitoring and corrective action as required.

## 8. Biodiversity

To encourage, where appropriate, the re-establishment of native vegetation on the rehabilitated mine site such the terrestrial biodiversity is largely re-instated over time, by:

- Stabilising disturbed areas to prevent erosion in the short- to medium term until a suitable vegetation cover has established; and
- Establishing viable self-sustaining vegetation communities of local fauna, as far as possible.

## F. A DESCRIPTION OF PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS, IDENTIFYING THE MANNER IN WHICH THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT [OBJECTIVES AND] OUTCOMES CONTEMPLATED IN PARAGRAPH (D) [AND (E)] WILL BE ACHIEVED, AND MUST, WHERE APPLICABLE, INCLUDE ACTIONS TO

Provide a rehabilitation plan that describes and shows the scale and aerial extent of the main mining activities, including the anticipated mining area at the time of closure.

The Rehabilitation & Closure Plan is attached as **Appendix 8**.

Calculate and state the quantum of the financial provision required to manage and rehabilitate the environment in accordance with the applicable guideline.

	Milnex CC Environmental Consultants				Ref No.: Date:	NC30/5/1/2/2/10171MR 17-04-2020	
			Α	В	С	D	E=A*B*C*D
No.	Description	Unit	Quantity	Master Rate	Multiplication factor	Weighting factor 1	Amount (Rands)
1	Dismantling of processing plant and related structures (including overland conveyors and powerlines)	m3	0	14,05	1	1	0
2 (A)	Demolition of steel buildings and structures	m2	214,5	195,76	1	1	41990,52
2(B)	Demolition of reinforced concrete buildings and structures	m2	0	288,49	1	1	0
3	Rehabilitation of access roads	m2	7100,9	35,03	1	1	248744,527
4 (A)	Demolition and rehabilitation of electrified railway lines	m	0	340,01	1	1	0
4 (A)	Demolition and rehabilitation of non-electrified railway lines	m	0	185,46	1	1	0
5	Demolition of housing and/or administration facilities	m2	0	391,53	1	1	0
6	Opencast rehabilitation including final voids and ramps	ha	3,36	205242,16	0,04	1	27584,5463
7	Sealing of shafts adits and inclines	m3	0	105,09	1	1	0
8 (A)	Rehabilitation of overburden and spoils	ha	0,346	136828,1	1	1	47342,5226
8 (B)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (non-polluting potential)	ha	0,2	170416,93	1	1	34083,386
8 ( C )	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation	ha	0	494971,55	1	1	0
9	Rehabilitation of subsided areas	ha	0	114572,93	1	1	0
10	General surface rehabilitation	ha	0	108390,94	1	1	0
11	River diversions	ha	0	108390,94	1	1	0
12	Fencing	m	436,4	123,64	1	1	53956,496
13	Water management	ha	0,1	41213,28	1	1	4121,328
14	2 to 3 years of maintenance and aftercare	ha	0	14424,65	1	1	0
15 (A)	Specialist study	Sum	0			1	0
15 (B)	Specialist study	Sum				1	0
					Sub Tot	al 1	457823,3259
1	Preliminary and General		54938	,79911	weighting 1	factor 2	54938,79911
2	Contingencies			4578	2.33259		45782.33259
-	Contingentities		μ	.010	Subtota	al 2	558544,46
					VAT (15	5%)	83781,67

#### a. Confirm that the financial provision will be provided as determined.

#### **Financial Guarantee**

T

The financial guarantee for the rehabilitation for land disturbed **Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** will be submitted

#### **Rehabilitation Fund**

**Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** will also make provision for rehabilitation during closure by establishing a rehabilitation trust.

#### IMPACTS TO BE MITIGATED IN THEIR RESPECTIVE PHASES

### Measures to rehabilitate the environment affected by the undertaking of any listed activity

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE	TIME PERIOD FOR
<ul> <li>(E.g. For prospecting - drill site, site camp, ablution facility, accommodation, equipment storage, sample storage, site office, access route etcetcetc</li> <li>E.g. For mining,-excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etcetcetc.)</li> </ul>	(of operation in which activity will take place. State; Planning and design, Pre- Construction' Construction , Operational, Rehabilitatio n, Closure, Post closure).	SCALE of disturbance (volumes, tonnages and hectares or m <sup>2</sup> )	(describe how each of the recommendations in herein will remedy the cause of pollution or degradation and migration of pollutants)	WITH STANDARDS (A description of how each of the recommendations herein will comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices that have been identified by Competent Authorities)	IMPLEMENTATION Describe the time period when the measures in the environmental management programme must be implemented Measures must be implemented when required. With regard to Rehabilitation specifically this must take place at the earliest opportunity. With regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state either: Upon cessation of the individual activity Or. Upon the cessation of mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting as the case may be.
Clearance of vegetation	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	2180.2646 Ha Total hectares to be disturbed. Concurrent backfilling will take place as far as	If the development is approved, contractors must ensure that no mammalian species are disturbed, trapped, hunted or killed. If the development is approved, every effort should be made to confine the footprint to the blocks allocated for the		Duration of operations on the mining activities.

possible in	development and have the least	
order to	possible edge effects on the	
rehabilitate.	surrounding area. The EMPr	
	also provides numerous	
	mitigation measures – refer to	
	section (f) of the EMPr.	
	The potential impacts	
	associated with damage to and	
	loss of farmland should be	
	effectively mitigated. The	
	aspects that should be covered	
	include:	
	1. The site should be fenced off	
	prior to commencement of	
	construction activities;	
	2. The footprint associated with	
	the construction related	
	activities (access roads,	
	construction platforms,	
	workshop etc.) should be	
	confined to the fenced off	
	area and minimised where	
	possible;	
	3. An Environmental Control	
	Officer (ECO) should be	
	appointed to monitor the	
	establishment phase of the	
	construction phase;	
	4. All areas disturbed by	
	construction related	
	activities, such as access	
	roads on the site,	
	construction platforms,	
	workshop area etc., should	
	be rehabilitated at the end of	
	the construction phase;	
	the construction phase,	

5. The implementation of a	
rehabilitation programme	
should be included in the	
terms of reference for the	
contractor/s appointed.	
Specifications for the	
rehabilitation are provided	
throughout the EMPr –	
section (f) of the EMPr.	
6. The implementation of the	
Rehabilitation Programme	
should be monitored by the	
ECO.	
7. Any activities that take place	
within 32 meters of a wetland	
or watercourse or the 1:100	
year flood lines will require	
authorisation in terms of the	
e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	
NEMA, however as far as	
possible infrastructure	
should be placed outside of	
wetlands and / or buffer	
lines.	
8. No stockpiling should take	
place within a watercourse or	
the 32m buffer.	
9. All stockpiles must be	
protected from erosion,	
stored on flat areas where	
run-off will be minimised,	
and be surrounded by bunds	
10. Erosion and sedimentation	
into channels must be	
minimised through the	
effective stabilisation	
(gabions and Reno	

mattresses) and the re-	
vegetation of any disturbed	
stream banks;	
11.Ensure that erosion	
management and sediment	
controls are strictly	
implemented from the	
beginning of site clearing	
activities, particularly as the	
soils in the study area are	
prone to erosion;	
12. All areas should be re-sloped	
and top-soiled where	
necessary and reseded with	
indigenous grasses to	
stabilise the loose material;	
13.Edge effects such as erosion	
must be strictly monitored	
and managed;	
14. Sensitivity maps have been	
developed for the study area,	
indicating the drainage lines	
and riparian systems, and	
their relevant buffer zones. It	
is recommended that this	
sensitivity map be	
considered during all phases	
of the development and with	
special mentioning of the	
planning of infrastructure, in	
order to aid in the	
conservation of and minimise	
impact on the riparian and	
aquatic habitat and	
resources within the study	
area;	
aita,	

15.Rehabilitation must ensure	
that the wetland structure	
and function are reinstated	
in such a way as to ensure	
the ongoing functionality of	
the larger wetland systems at	
pre-mining levels.	
16. Any areas where bank failure	
is observed, due to the	
prospecting or mining	
impacts, should be	
immediately repaired;	
17.As far as possible the existing	
road network should be	
utilised, minimising the need	
to develop new access routes	
resulting in an increased	
impact on the local	
environment. Should	
temporary roads or access	
routes be necessary and	
unavoidable, proper	
planning must take place	
and the site sensitivity plan	
must be taken into	
consideration. If additional	
roads are required, then	
wherever feasible such roads	
should be constructed a	
distance from the more	
sensitive riparian areas and	
not directly adjacent thereto.	
If crossings are required they	
should cross the systems at	
right angles, as far as	
possible to minimise impacts	
in the receiving environment;	

18. The duration of impacts on	
the riverine and drainage line	
systems should be	
minimised as far as possible	
by ensuring that the	
duration of time in which	
flow alteration and	
sedimentation will take place	
is minimised;	
19. Stabilisation of banks by	
employing one of the	
individual techniques below	
or a combination thereof, is	
essential, given the inherent	
susceptibility of the soils to	
erosion. Such measures	
include:	
20.Re-sloping of banks to a	
maximum of a 1:3 slope;	
21.Revegetation of re-profiled	
slopes;	
22. Temporary stabilisation of	
slopes using geotextiles; and	
23.Installation of gabions and	
reno-mattresses.	
24.To prevent the further erosion of soils, management	
5	
berms, soil traps, hessian	
curtains and storm water	
diversion away from areas	
particularly susceptible to	
erosion;	
25.Install erosion berms during	
construction to prevent gully	
formation:	

26.Berms every 50m should be	
installed where any	
disturbed soils have a slope	
of less than 2%,	
27.Berms every 25m where the	
track slopes between 2% and	
10%,	
28.Berms every 20m where the	
track slopes between 10%	
and 15% and	
29.Berms every 10m where the	
track slope is greater than	
15%;	
30. Sheet runoff from access	
roads should be slowed down	
by the strategic placement of	
berms and sandbags;	
31.All soils compacted as a	
result of construction	
activities falling outside of	
project areas should be	
ripped and profiled. Special	
attention should be paid to	
alien and invasive control	
within these areas. Alien and	
invasive vegetation control	
should take place	
throughout all construction	
and rehabilitation phases to	
prevent loss of floral habitat;	
32.As far as possible, all	
rehabilitation activities	
should occur in the low flow	
season, during the drier	
winter months.	
33.Trenches and deep	
excavations should not be	
CACAVALIONS SHOULD NOT DE	

	left open for extended periods		
	of time as fauna may fall in		
	and become trapped in them.		
	Trenches which are exposed		
	should contain soil ramps		
	allowing fauna to escape the		
	trench.		
	Specialist (Mpho Ramalivhana)		
	mitigation measures:		
	• Supervision by an ecologist to		
	ensure success of the rescue		
	operation		
	• Place drilling holes away from		
	any red listed and/or		
	protected plant species		
	• Use already available farm		
	roads to avoid trampling red		
	listed plant species		
	• Due to the sensitivity of the		
	areas it is advised that areas		
	designated for vegetation		
	clearing should be identified		
	and visibly marked off and		
	also approved as part of final		
	drilling map		
	• Vegetation clearing areas		
	should be kept to a minimum		
	and restricted to the		
	proposed drilling sites.		
	• Exposed areas should be		
	rehabilitated with indigenous		
	plants to the project area as		
	France to the project and ab	1	

soon as construction is finished. • Do not disturb nests,	
breeding sites or young ones.	
Do not attempt to kill or	
capture snakes unless	
directly threatening the	
safety of employees.	
• Dogs or other pets are not	
allowed to the worksite as	
they are threats to the	
natural wild animal	
• A low speed limit should be	
enforced on site to reduce	
wild animal-vehicle collisions	
• No animals should be	
intentionally killed or	
destroyed and poaching and	
hunting should not be	
permitted on the site.	
Severe contractual fines	
must be imposed and	
immediate dismissal on any	
contract employee who is	
found attempting to snare or	
otherwise harms remaining	
faunal species.	
• Hunting weapons are	
prohibited on site.	
• Contract employees must be	
educated about the value of	
wild animals and the	

		importance of their		
		conservation.		
		• The ECO must conduct		
		regular site inspections of		
		removing any snares or traps		
		that have been erected.		
		• Employees and contractors		
		should be made aware of the		
		presence of, and rules		
		regarding, flora and fauna		
		through suitable induction		
		training and on-site signage.		
		• Ensure that the colours used		
		to paint the buildings		
		including the roof are		
		blending to the environment		
Construction of roads	Pitting and +- 500r	34.Planning of access routes to	Compliance with	Duration of operations on the
	trenching	the site for	Duty of Care as	prospecting activities.
	phase-	construction/mining	detailed within	
	(construction	purposes shall be done in	NEMA	
	and	conjunction with the		
	operation	Contractor and the		
	phase)	Landowner. All agreements		
		reached should be		
		documented and no verbal		
		agreements should be made.		
		The Contractor shall clearly mark all access roads. Roads		
		not to be used shall be		
		marked with a "NO ENTRY		
		for Mining vehicles" sign.		
		35.Construction routes and		
		required access roads must		
		be clearly defined.		

			36. Damping down of the un-		
			surfaced roads must be		
			implemented to reduce dust		
			and nuisance.		
			37.Soils compacted by		
			construction/Mining		
			activities shall be deep ripped		
			to loosen compacted layers		
			and re-graded to even		
			running levels.		
			38. The contractor must ensure		
			that damage caused by		
			related traffic to the gravel		
			access road is repaired		
			continuously. The costs		
			associated with the repair		
			must be borne by the		
			contractor;		
			39.Dust suppression measures		
			must be implemented for		
			heavy vehicles such as		
			wetting of gravel roads on a		
			regular basis and ensuring		
			that vehicles used to		
			transport the gravel are fitted		
			with tarpaulins or covers;		
			40.All vehicles must be road-		
			worthy and drivers must be		
			qualified and made aware of		
			the potential road safety		
			issues and need for strict		
			speed limits.		
Mining of Diamonds (Alluvial)	Pitting and	2180.2646	41.The Contractor should, prior	Compliance with	Duration of operations on the
and Diamonds (General) –	trenching	Ha Total	to the commencement of	Duty of Care as	mine
Soils and geology	phase-	hectares to be	earthworks determine the	detailed within	
	(construction		average depth of topsoil (If	NEMA	
	1 1 1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2				

and	Concurrent	topsoil exists), and agree on		
operation	backfilling	this with the ECO. The full		
phase)	will take place	depth of topsoil should be		
	as far as	stripped from areas affected		
	possible in	by construction and related		
	order to	activities prior to the		
	rehabilitate.	commencement of major		
		earthworks. This should		
		include the building		
		footprints, working areas and		
		storage areas. Topsoil must		
		be reused where possible to		
		rehabilitate disturbed areas.		
		42. Care must be taken not to		
		mix topsoil and subsoil		
		during stripping.		
		43.The topsoil must be		
		conserved on site in and		
		around the pit/trench area.		
		44. Subsoil and overburden in		
		the Mining area should be		
		stockpiled separately to be		
		returned for backfilling in the		
		correct soil horizon order.		
		45.If stockpiles are exposed to		
		windy conditions or heavy		
		rain, they should be covered		
		either by vegetation or		
		geofabric, depending on the		
		duration of the project.		
		Stockpiles may further be		
		protected by the construction		
		of berms, trenches or low		
		brick walls around their		
		bases.		
		46.Stockpiles should be kept		
		clear of weeds and alien		

			vegetation growth by regular
			weeding.
			47. Where contamination of soil
			is expected, analysis must be
			done prior to disposal of soil
			to determine the appropriate
			disposal route. Proof from an
			approved waste disposal site
			where contaminated soils are
			dumped if and when a
			spillage/leakage occurs
			should be attained and given
			to the project manager.
			48. The impact on the geology
			will be permanent. There is
			no mitigation measure.
Mining Diamonds (Alluvial)	Pitting and	2180.2646	1. The Mining activities must Compliance with Duration of operations on the
and Diamonds (General) –	trenching	Ha Total	aim to adhere to the relevant Duty of Care as Mining area
excavations	phase-	hectares to be	noise regulations and limit detailed within
	(construction	disturbed.	noise to within standard NEMA
	and	Concurrent	working hours in order to
	operation	backfilling	reduce disturbance of
	phase)	will take place	
	F,	as far as	
			2. Mine, pans, workshops and
		order to	
		rehabilitate.	should be located well away
			from noise sensitive areas.
			Once the proposed final
			layouts are made available by
			the Contractor(s), the sites
			must be evaluated in detail
			and specific measures
			designed in to the system.
			3. Truck traffic should be
			routed away from noise

sensitive areas, where
possible.
4. Noise levels must be kept
within acceptable limits.
5. Noisy operations should be
combined so that they occur
where possible at the same
time.
6. Mine workers to wear
necessary ear protection
gear.
7. Noisy activities to take place
during allocated hours.
8. Noise from labourers must be
controlled.
9. Noise suppression measures
must be applied to all
equipment. Equipment must
be kept in good working order
and where appropriate fitted
with silencers which are kept
in good working order.
Should the vehicles or
equipment not be in good
working order, the
Contractor may be instructed
to remove the offending
vehicle or machinery from the
site.
10.The Contractor must take
measures to discourage
labourers from loitering in
the area and causing noise
disturbance. Where possible
labour shall be transported to
and from the site by the
Contractor or his Sub-

Contractors by the	
Contractors own transport.	
11.Implementation of enclosure	
and cladding of processing	
plants.	
12. Applying regular and	
thorough maintenance	
schedules to equipment and	
processes. An increase in	
noise emission levels very	
often is a sign of the	
imminent mechanical failure	
of a machine.	

## **IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES**

(A description of impact management outcomes, identifying the standard of impact management required for the aspects contemplated in paragraph ();

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL	ASPECTS	PHASE	MITIGATION	STANDARD TO
(whether listed or not	IMPACT	AFFECTED	In which impact is	TYPE	<b>BE ACHIEVED</b>
listed).			anticipated		
(E.g. Excavations, blastin			(e.g.	(modify, remedy, control, or stop)	(Impact avoided,
stockpiles, discard dum			Construction,	through	noise levels,
or dams, Loading, hauli	-		commissioning,	(e.g. noise control measures, storm-	dust levels,
and transport, Wat	er disturbance,		operational	water control, dust control,	rehabilitation
TIT J TIT T	nd fly rock,		Decommissioning,	rehabilitation, design measures,	standards, end
boreholes,	surface water		closure, post-	blasting controls, avoidance,	use objectives)
accommodation, office	•		closure)	relocation, alternative activity etc.	etc.
ablution, stor	/ 0			etc)	
workshops, processi					
plant, storm water contr	-			E.g.	
berms, roads, pipeline	es, etcetc)			• Modify through alternative	
power lines, conveyo	:s,			method.	
etcetcetc.)				Control through noise control	

				• Control through management and monitoring	
				• Remedy through rehabilitation	
Clearance of vegetation	Loss or fragmentation of habitats	Fauna & flora	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>Existing vegetation <ol> <li>Vegetation removal must be limited to the Mining area.</li> <li>Vegetation to be removed as it becomes necessary rather than removal of all vegetation throughout the site in one step.</li> <li>No vegetation to be used for firewood.</li> <li>Exotic and invasive plant species should not be allowed to establish, if the development is approved.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Rehabilitation <ol> <li>All damaged areas shall be rehabilitated upon completion of the contract.</li> <li>Re-vegetation of the disturbed site is aimed at approximating as near as possible the natural vegetative conditions prevailing prior to construction.</li> <li>All natural areas impacted during construction/Mining must be rehabilitated with locally indigenous grasses typical of the representative botanical unit.</li> <li>Rehabilitation must take place in a phased approach as soon as possible.</li> <li>Rehabilitation process must make use of species indigenous</li> </ol></li></ul>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

to the area. Seeds from	
surrounding seed banks can be	
used for re-seeding.	
10. Rehabilitation must be executed	
in such a manner that surface	
run-off will not cause erosion of	
disturbed areas.	
11.Planting of indigenous tree	
species in areas not to be	
cultivated or built on must be	
encouraged.	
Demarcation of Mining area	
12.All plants not interfering with	
Mining operations shall be left	
undisturbed clearly marked and	
indicated on the site plan.	
13.The Mining area must be well	
demarcated and no	
construction/Mining activities	
must be allowed outside of this	
demarcated footprint.	
14.Vegetation removal must be	
phased in order to reduce	
impact of construction/Mining.	
15. Site office and laydown areas	
must be clearly demarcated and	
no encroachment must occur	
beyond demarcated areas.	
16.Strict and regular auditing of	
the Mining process to ensure	
containment of the Mining and	
laydown areas.	
17. Soils must be kept free of	
-	
petrochemical solutions that	
may be kept on site during	
construction/Mining. Spillage	

can result in a loss of soil functionality thus limiting the re-establishment of flora.
Utilisation of resources18. Gathering of firewood, fruit, muti plants, or any other natural material onsite or in areas adjacent to the site is prohibited unless with prior approval of the ECO.
<b>Exotic vegetation</b> 19. Alien vegetation on the site will need to be controlled.20. The Contractor should be responsible for implementing a programme of weed control (particularly in areas where soil has been disturbed); and grassing of any remaining stockpiles to prevent weed invasion.21. The spread of exotic species occurring throughout the site should be controlled.
Herbicides         22. Herbicide use shall only be allowed according to contract specifications. The application shall be according to set specifications and under supervision of a qualified technician. The possibility of leaching into the surrounding environment shall be properly

				investigated and only	
				environmentally friendly	
				herbicides shall be used.	
				23.The use of pesticides and	
				herbicides on the site must be	
				discouraged as these impact on	
				important pollinator species of	
				indigenous vegetation.	
				Fauna	
				24. Rehabilitation to be undertaken	
				as soon as possible after the	
				Mining activities have been	
				completed.	
				25.No trapping or snaring to fauna	
				on the construction/Mining site	
				should be allowed.	
				26.No faunal species must be	
				disturbed, trapped, hunted or	
				killed by maintenance staff	
				during any routine maintenance	
				at the development.	
Mining Diamonds (Alluvial)	Loss of topsoil	Soil	Pitting and	1. The Contractor should, prior to Minimisa	tion of
and Diamonds (General) –			trenching phase-	the commencement of impacts t	0
excavations			(construction and	earthworks determine the acceptabl	e limits
			operation phase)	average depth of topsoil, and	
			1 1 /	agree on this with the ECO. The	
				full depth of topsoil should be	
				stripped from areas affected by	
				construction and related	
				activities prior to the	
				commencement of major	
				earthworks. This should include	
				the building footprints, working	
				areas and storage areas. Topsoil	
				must be reused where possible	
				to rehabilitate disturbed areas.	

2. Care must be taken not to mix	
topsoil and subsoil during	
stripping.	
3. The topsoil must be conserved	
on site in and around the	
pit/trench area.	
4. Subsoil and overburden in the	
Mining area should be	
stockpiled separately to be	
returned for backfilling in the	
correct soil horizon order.	
5. If stockpiles are exposed to	
windy conditions or heavy rain,	
they should be covered either by	
vegetation or geofabric,	
depending on the duration of	
the project. Stockpiles may	
further be protected by the	
construction of berms or low	
brick walls around their bases.	
6. Stockpiles should be kept clear	
of weeds and alien vegetation	
growth by regular weeding.	
7. Where contamination of soil is	
expected, analysis must be done	
prior to disposal of soil to	
determine the appropriate	
disposal route. Proof from an	
approved waste disposal site	
where contaminated soils are	
dumped if and when a	
spillage/leakage occurs should	
be attained and given to the	
project manager.	
Establish an effective record keeping	
system for each area where soil is	

			<ul> <li>disturbed for Mining purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below.</li> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of each area.</li> <li>Record the date of topsoil stripping.</li> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled.</li> <li>Record the date of cessation Mining activities at the particular site.</li> <li>Photograph the area on cessation of Mining activities.</li> <li>Record date and depth of respreading of topsoil.</li> <li>Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress of restoration over time.</li> </ul>
Erosion	Soil Air Water	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	<ol> <li>An effective system of run-off control should be implemented, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.</li> <li>Periodical site inspection should be included in environmental performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the</li> </ol>

run-off control system and	
specifically records the	
occurrence of any erosion on	
site or downstream.	
3. Wind screening and stormwater	
control should be undertaken to	
prevent soil loss from the site.	
4. The use of silt fences and sand	
bags must be implemented in	
areas that are susceptible to	
erosion.	
5. Other erosion control measures	
that can be implemented are as	
follows:	
o Brush packing with	
cleared vegetation	
• Mulch or chip packing	
<ul> <li>Planting of vegetation</li> </ul>	
• Hydroseeding/hand	
sowing	
6. Sensitive areas need to be	
identified prior to	
construction/Mining so that the	
necessary precautions can be	
implemented.	
7. All erosion control mechanisms	
need to be regularly maintained.	
8. Seeding of topsoil and subsoil	
stockpiles to prevent wind and	
water erosion of soil surfaces.	
9. Retention of vegetation where	
possible to avoid soil erosion.	
10. Vegetation clearance should be	
phased to ensure that the	
minimum area of soil is exposed	
to potential erosion at any one	
time.	

			11.Re-vegetation of disturbed	
			surfaces should occur	
			immediately after	
			construction/Mining activities	
			are completed. This should be	
			done through seeding with	
			indigenous grasses.	
			12.No impediment to the natural	
			water flow other than approved	
			erosion control works is	
			permitted.	
			13.To prevent stormwater damage,	
			the increase in stormwater run-	
			off resulting from	
			construction/Mining activities	
			must be estimated and the	
			drainage system assessed	
			accordingly.	
			14. Stockpiles not used in three (3)	
			months after stripping must be	
			seeded or backfilled to prevent	
			dust and erosion.	
Air Pollution	Air	Pitting and	Dust control	Minimisation of
	7 111	trenching phase-	1. Wheel washing and damping	
		(construction and	down of un-surfaced and un-	acceptable limits
		operation phase)	vegetated areas.	
		operation phase	2. Retention of vegetation where	
			possible will reduce dust travel.	
			3. Clearing activities must only be	
			0	
			done during agreed working	
			times and permitting weather	
			conditions to avoid drifting of sand and dust into	
			neighbouring areas.	
			4. Damping down of all exposed	
	1		soil surfaces with a water	

bowser or sprinklers when	
necessary to reduce dust.	
5. The Contractor shall be	
responsible for dust control on	
site to ensure no nuisance is	
caused to the neighbouring	
communities.	
6. A speed limit of 30km/h must	
not be exceeded on site.	
7. Any complaints or claims	
emanating from the lack of dust	
control shall be attended to	
immediately by the Contractor.	
8. Any dirt roads that are utilised	
by the workers must be	
5	
regularly maintained to ensure	
that dust levels are controlled.	
Odour control	
9. Regular servicing of vehicles in	
order to limit gaseous	
emissions.	
10.Regular servicing of onsite	
toilets to avoid potential odours.	
Rehabilitation	
11.The Contractor should	
commence rehabilitation of	
exposed soil surfaces as soon as	
practical after completion of	
earthworks.	
Fire prevention	
12. No open fires shall be allowed on	
site under any circumstance. All	
cooking shall be done in	
demarcated areas that are safe	

	and cannot cause runaway
	fires.
	13.The Contractor shall have
	operational fire-fighting
	equipment available on site at
	all times. The level of firefighting
	equipment must be assessed
	and evaluated through a typical
	risk assessment process.
Noise	Pitting and         1. The Mining activities must aim         Minimisation of
10150	trenching phase-
	(construction and regulations and limit noise to acceptable limits
	operation phase) within standard working hours in order to reduce disturbance
	of dwellings in close proximity to
	the development.
	2. Mine, crushers, workshops and
	other noisy fixed facilities
	should be located well away
	from noise sensitive areas. Once
	the proposed final layouts are
	made available by the
	Contractor(s), the sites must be
	evaluated in detail and specific
	measures designed in to the
	system.
	3. Truck traffic should be routed
	away from noise sensitive areas,
	where possible.
	4. Noise levels must be kept within
	acceptable limits.
	5. Noisy operations should be
	combined so that they occur
	where possible at the same
	time.
	6. Mine workers to wear necessary
	ear protection gear.

<ul> <li>7. Noisy activities to take place during allocated hours.</li> <li>8. Noise from labourers must be controlled.</li> <li>9. Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working or der. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working or der. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors own transport.</li> <li>11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.</li> <li>12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a machine.</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>8. Noise from labourers must be controlled.</li> <li>9. Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment. Equipment Equipment Equipment Equipment Equipment and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.</li> <li>10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers for discourage labourers for be sub-Contractor or his Sub-Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors by the Contractors own transport.</li> <li>11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.</li> <li>12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of</li> </ul>		7. N	oisy activities to take place	
controlled.         9. Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.         10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractors by the Contractors own transport.         11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.         12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		d	uring allocated hours.	
9. Noise suppression measures         must be applied to all         equipment. Equipment must be         kept in good working order and         where appropriate fitted with         silencers which are kept in good         working order. Should the         vehicles or equipment not be in         good working order, the         Contractor may be instructed to         remove the offending vehicle or         machinery from the site.         10. The Contractor must take         measures to discourage         labourers from loitering in the         area and causing noise         disturbance. Where possible         labourers by the Contractors         Contractors by the Contractors         Contractors by the Contractors         Contractors by the Contractors         Contractors by the Contractors         Own transport.         11.Implementation of enclosure         and cladding of processing         plants.         12. Applying regular and thorough         maintenance schedules to         equipment and processes. An         increase in noise emission levels         very often is a sign of the         imminent mechanical failure of <td></td> <td>8. N</td> <td>oise from labourers must be</td> <td></td>		8. N	oise from labourers must be	
must be applied to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10.The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11.Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12.Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		С	ontrolled.	
equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor must be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		9. N	oise suppression measures	
kept in good working order and where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.         10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractors by the Contractors own transport.         11.Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.         12.Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		m	nust be applied to all	
where appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractors or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		e	quipment. Equipment must be	
silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		k	ept in good working order and	
silencers which are kept in good working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		w	here appropriate fitted with	
working order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10.The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11.Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12.Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of				
good working order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of				
Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.         10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors by the Contractors own transport.         11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.         12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		V	ehicles or equipment not be in	
remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site. 10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		g	ood working order, the	
machinery from the site.         10. The Contractor must take         measures to discourage         labourers from loitering in the         area and causing noise         disturbance. Where possible         labour shall be transported to         and from the site by the         Contractor or his Sub-         Contractors by the Contractors         own transport.         11. Implementation of enclosure         and cladding of processing         plants.         12. Applying regular and thorough         maintenance schedules to         equipment and processes. An         increase in noise emission levels         very often is a sign of the         imminent mechanical failure of		C	ontractor may be instructed to	
10. The Contractor must take         measures       to         discourage         labourers from loitering in the         area       and causing noise         disturbance.       Where possible         labour shall be transported to         and from the site by the         Contractors or his Sub-         Contractors by the Contractors         own transport.         11. Implementation of enclosure         and cladding of processing         plants.         12. Applying regular and thorough         maintenance       schedules         equipment and processes. An         increase in noise emission levels         very often is a sign of the         imminent mechanical failure of		re	emove the offending vehicle or	
measurestodiscouragelabourersfromlabourersdisturbance.wherepossiblelabourshallbetransportedtoandfromthestartransport11.transport.11.transport.11.transport.11.transport.12.Applyingregular andthroughmaintenanceschedulestoequipmentandplants.12.transport andprocesses.transporttransporttransporttransport. <t< td=""><td></td><td>n n</td><td>nachinery from the site.</td><td></td></t<>		n n	nachinery from the site.	
Image: state of the state		10.T	he Contractor must take	
area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		n n	neasures to discourage	
disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11.Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12.Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		18	abourers from loitering in the	
labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport.11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		a	rea and causing noise	
and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11.Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12.Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		d	isturbance. Where possible	
Contractor or his Sub- Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		la	abour shall be transported to	
Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		a	nd from the site by the	
own transport.         11. Implementation of enclosure         and cladding of processing         plants.         12. Applying regular and thorough         maintenance schedules to         equipment and processes. An         increase in noise emission levels         very often is a sign of the         imminent mechanical failure of		C	ontractor or his Sub-	
11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.         12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		C	ontractors by the Contractors	
and cladding of processing plants. 12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		0'	wn transport.	
plants. 12.Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		11.Ir	nplementation of enclosure	
12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		a	nd cladding of processing	
maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		p	lants.	
equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		12.A	pplying regular and thorough	
increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		n n	naintenance schedules to	
very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of		e	quipment and processes. An	
imminent mechanical failure of		ir	ncrease in noise emission levels	
		V	ery often is a sign of the	
a machine.		ir ir	nminent mechanical failure of	
		a	machine.	

Impact on	Heritage	Pitting and	1. Any finds must be reported to Minimisation of
potential	_	trenching phase-	the nearest National impacts to
cultural and		(construction and	Monuments office to comply acceptable limits
heritage		operation phase)	with the National Heritage
artefacts		· ·	Resources Act (Act No 25 of
			1999) and to DEA.
			2. Local museums as well as the
			South African Heritage
			Resource Agency (SAHRA)
			should be informed if any
			artefacts are uncovered in the
			affected area.
			3. The Contractor must ensure
			that his workforce is aware of
			the necessity of reporting any
			possible historical or
			archaeological finds to the ECO
			so that appropriate action can
			be taken.
			4. Any discovered artefacts shall
			not be removed under any
			circumstances. Any destruction
			of a site can only be allowed
			once a permit is obtained and
			the site has been mapped and
			noted. Permits shall be obtained
			from the SAHRA should the
			proposed site affect any world
			heritage sites or if any heritage
			sites are to be destroyed or
			altered.
			Management and Mitigation Measures
			according to the Phase 1 HIA
			conducted by J.A. van Schalkwyk

<ol> <li>A person or entity, e.g. the Environmental Control Officer, must be tasked to take responsibility for the heritage sites and must be held accountable for any damage.</li> <li>Known sites must be located and isolated, e.g. by fencing them off. All construction workers must be informed that these are no-go areas, unless accompanied by the individual or persons representing the Environmental Control Officer as identified above.</li> <li>In areas where the vegetation is threatening the heritage sites, e.g. growing trees pushing walls over, it should be removed, but only after permission for the methods proposed has been granted by SAHRA. A heritage official should be part of the team executing these measures.</li> <li>Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided during construction</li> </ol>	
measures. 4. Known sites should be clearly	

	6. Should any heritage artefacts be	
	exposed during excavation, work on	
	the area where the artefacts were	
	discovered, shall cease immediately	
	and the Environmental Control	
	Officer shall be notified as soon as	
	possible;	
	7. All discoveries shall be reported	
	immediately to a heritage	
	practitioner so that an investigation	
	and evaluation of the finds can be	
	made. Acting upon advice from	
	these specialists, the	
	Environmental Control Officer will	
	advise the necessary actions to be	
	taken;	
	8. Under no circumstances shall any	
	artefacts be removed, destroyed or	
	interfered with by anyone on the	
	site; and	
	9. Contractors and workers shall be	
	advised of the penalties associated	
	with the unlawful removal of	
	cultural, historical, archaeological	
	or palaeontological artefacts, as set	
	out in the National Heritage	
	Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999),	
	Section 51. (1).	
	10. Specialist findings mitigation	
	measures	
	Chance finds: Stone Age material	

1			
		(5) No further action required: This	
		is applicable only where sites or	
		features have been rated to be of	
		such low significance that it does	
		not warrant further documentation,	
		as it is viewed to be fully	
		documented after inclusion in this	
		report.	
		• Site 7.3.1: Historic house	
		(1) Avoidance/Preserve: This is	
		viewed to be the primary form of	
		mitigation and applies where any	
		type of development occurs within a	
		formally protected or significant or	
		sensitive heritage context and is	
		likely to have a high negative	
		impact; or, alternatively;	
		(2) Archaeological investigation:	
		This is appropriate where	
		development occurs in a context of	
		heritage significance and where the	
		impact is such that it can be	
		mitigated. Mitigation is to excavate	
		the site by archaeological	
		techniques, document the site (map	
		and photograph) and analyse the	
		recovered material to acceptable	
		standards.	
		11. Conditions for inclusion in the	
		environmental authorisation	
		according to the Phase 1 HIA	
		specialist:	
	1		1

			<ul> <li>If the identified structure is to be demolished, it must be fully documented – mapped, photographed and described – beforehand.</li> <li>The Palaeontological Sensitivity Map (SAHRIS) indicate that the study area has moderate sensitivity of fossil remains to be found and therefore a desktop palaeontological study of the site is required.</li> <li>Should archaeological sites or graves be exposed in other areas during construction work, it must immediately be reported to a heritage practitioner so that an investigation and evaluation of the finds can be made</li> </ul>	
Waste management	Pollution	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>Litter management <ol> <li>Refuse bins must be placed at strategic positions to ensure that litter does not accumulate within the construction site.</li> <li>The Contractor shall supply waste collection bins where such is not available and all solid waste collected shall be disposed of at registered/licensed landfill.</li> <li>Good housekeeping practices should be implemented to regularly maintain the litter and</li> </ol></li></ul>	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

	rubble situation on the
	construction site.
	4. If possible and feasible, all
	waste generated on site must be
	separated into glass, plastic,
	paper, metal and wood and
	recycled. An independent
	contractor can be appointed to
	conduct this recycling.
	5. Littering by the employees of the
	Contractor shall not be allowed
	under any circumstances. The
	ECO shall monitor the neatness
	of the work sites as well as the
	Contractor campsite.
	6. Skip waste containers should be
	maintained on site. These
	should be kept covered and
	arrangements made for them to
	be collected regularly.
	7. All waste must be removed from
	the site and transported to a
	landfill site promptly to ensure
	that it does not attract vermin or
	produce odours.
	8. Where a registered waste site is
	not available close to the
	construction site, the
	Contractor shall provide a
	method statement with regard
	to waste management.
	9. A certificate of disposal shall be
	obtained by the Contractor and
	kept on file, if relevant.
	10. Under no circumstances may
	solid waste be burnt on site.
	Solid waste be built on site.

11.All waste must be removed	
promptly to ensure that it does	
not attract vermin or produce	
odours.	
Hazardous waste	
12. All waste hazardous materials	
must be carefully stored as	
advised by the ECO, and then	
disposed of offsite at a licensed	
-	
landfill site, where practical.	
Incineration may be used where	
relevant.	
13.Contaminants to be stored	
safely to avoid spillage.	
14. Machinery must be properly	
maintained to keep oil leaks in	
check.	
15.All necessary precaution	
measures shall be taken to	
prevent soil or surface water	
pollution from hazardous	
materials used during	
construction and any spills	
shall immediately be cleaned up	
and all affected areas	
rehabilitated.	
Tenabilitated.	
Sanitation	
16. The Contractor shall install	
mobile chemical toilets on the	
site.	
17.Staff shall be sensitised to the	
fact that they should use these	
facilities at all times. No	
indiscriminate sanitary	

activities on site shall be allowed. 18.Toilets shall be serviced regularly and the ECO shall inspect toilets regularly. 19.Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year flood line from any natural or mammade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer. 20.Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility. 21.The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbiden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant. 22.Pottable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23.Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24.Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the precise method of treatment for		
18. Toilets shall be serviced         regularly and the ECO shall         inspect toilets regularly.         19. Toilets should be no closer than         50m or above the 1:100 year         flood line from any natural or         mammade water bodies or         drainage lines or alternatively         located in a place approved of by         the Engineer.         20. Under no circumstances may         open areas, neighbours fences         or the surrounding bush be         used as a toilet facility.         21. The construction of "Long Drop"         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and         extent of the spill, contaminated         soil must be either excavated or         treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil         musing appropriate         tools/machinery to storage         containers until treated or         disposed of at a licensed         hzardous landfill site.         25.The ECO must determine the	activities on site shall be	
regularly and the ECO shall inspect toilets regularly. 19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year flood line from any natural or mammade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer. 20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility. 21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant. 22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.	allowed.	
<ul> <li>in "spect toilets regularly.</li> <li>19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year flood line from any natural or mammade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer.</li> <li>20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.</li> <li>21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.</li> <li>22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.</li> <li><b>Remedial actions</b></li> <li>23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spil, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.</li> <li>24. Excavation of contaminated soil must nove careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.</li> <li>25. The ECO must determine the</li> </ul>	18.Toilets shall be serviced	
<ul> <li>in "spect toilets regularly.</li> <li>19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year flood line from any natural or mammade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer.</li> <li>20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.</li> <li>21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.</li> <li>22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.</li> <li><b>Remedial actions</b></li> <li>23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spil, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.</li> <li>24. Excavation of contaminated soil must nove careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.</li> <li>25. The ECO must determine the</li> </ul>	regularly and the ECO shall	
<ul> <li>19. Toïlets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year flood line from any natural or mammade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer.</li> <li>20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.</li> <li>21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.</li> <li>22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.</li> <li><b>Remedial actions</b></li> <li>23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.</li> <li>24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.</li> <li>25. The ECO must determine the</li> </ul>	5 5	
S0m or above the 1:100 year         flood line from any natural or         mammade water bodies or         drainage lines or alternatively         located in a place approved of by         the Engineer.         20. Under no circumstances may         open areas, neighbours fences         or the surrounding bush be         used as a toilet facility.         21. The construction of "Long Drop"         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets is provided         for all construction of "Long Drop"         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets is provided         for all construction staff.         Remedial actions         23. Depending on the nature and         extent of the spil, contaminated         soil must be either excavated or         trated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil         must involve careful removal of         soil using appropriate         tools/machinery to storage         containers until treated or         disposed of at a licensed         hazardous landfill site.         25.The ECO must		
flood line from any natural or mammade water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer.         20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.         21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.         Remedial actions         23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.		
mammade       water       bodies       or         drainage       lines or alternatively       located in a place approved of by         the Engineer.       20. Under no circumstances may         open areas, neighbours fences       or       the surrounding bush be         used as a toilet facility.       21. The construction of "Long Drop"       toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets connected to the sewage       treatment plant.       22. Potable water must be provided         for all construction staff.       Remedial actions       23. Depending on the nature and         extent of the spill, contaminated       soil must be either excavated or       treatment of contaminated         soil       using       appropriate       tools/machinery to storage         containers       using       appropriate       tools/machinery to storage         containers       using       appropriate       tools/machinery to storage         containers       using       appropriate       tools/machinery to storage		
drainage lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the Engineer.         20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.         21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.         Remedial actions         23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.		
Image: Second		
the Engineer. 20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility. 21. The construction of 'Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant. 22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25. The ECO must determine the	e ·	
20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility. 21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant. 22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25. The ECO must determine the		
open areas, neighbours fences         or the surrounding bush be         used as a toilet facility.         21. The construction of "Long Drop"         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets connected to the sewage         treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided         for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and         extent of the spill, contaminated         soil must be either excavated or         treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil         must involve careful removal of         soil using appropriate         tools/machinery to storage         containers until treated or         disposed of at a licensed         hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility. 21.The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant. 22.Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23.Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24.Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	· · · · ·	
used as a toilet facility.         21. The construction of "Long Drop"         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets is connected to the sewage         treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided         for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and         extent of the spill, contaminated         soil must be either excavated or         treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil         must involve careful removal of         soil using appropriate         tools/machinery to storage         containers until treated or         disposed of at a licensed         hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets is forbidden, but rather         toilets connected to the sewage         treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided         for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and         extent of the spill, contaminated         soil must be either excavated or         treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil         must involve careful removal of         soil using appropriate         tools/machinery to storage         containers until treated or         disposed of at a licensed         hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
treatment plant.         22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
22.Potable water must be provided for all construction staff. <b>Remedial actions</b> 23.Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.         24.Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.         25.The ECO must determine the	-	
for all construction staff.         Remedial actions         23. Depending on the nature and         extent of the spill, contaminated         soil must be either excavated or         treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil         must involve careful removal of         soil using appropriate         tools/machinery to storage         containers until treated or         disposed of at a licensed         hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
Remedial actions         23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site.         24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.         25. The ECO must determine the		
23.Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24.Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the		
extent of the spill, contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24.Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	Remedial actions	
soil must be either excavated or treated on-site. 24.Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	23.Depending on the nature and	
treated on-site.24. Excavation of contaminated soilmust involve careful removal ofsoilusingappropriatetools/machineryto storagecontainersuntil treated ordisposed of at a licensedhazardous landfill site.25. The ECO must determine the	extent of the spill, contaminated	
24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25. The ECO must determine the	soil must be either excavated or	
must involve careful removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	treated on-site.	
soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	24. Excavation of contaminated soil	
tools/machinery to storage containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	must involve careful removal of	
containers until treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	soil using appropriate	
disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	tools/machinery to storage	
hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	containers until treated or	
hazardous landfill site. 25.The ECO must determine the	disposed of at a licensed	
precise method of treatment for	25.The ECO must determine the	
	precise method of treatment for	

					_
				polluted soil. This could involve	
				the application of soil absorbent	
				materials as well as oil-digestive	
				powders to the contaminated	
				soil.	
				26.If a spill occurs on an	
				impermeable surface such as	
				cement or concrete, the surface	
				spill must be contained using oil	
				absorbent material.	
				27.If necessary, oil absorbent	
				sheets or pads must be attached	
				to leaky machinery or	
				infrastructure.	
				28. Materials used for the	
				remediation of petrochemical	
				spills must be used according to	
				product specifications and	
				guidance for use.	
				29.Contaminated remediation	
				materials must be carefully	
				removed from the area of the	
				spill so as to prevent further	
				release of petrochemicals to the	
				environment, and stored in	
				adequate containers until	
	<b>TT</b> T , 44 . •	<b>TT</b> 7 /		appropriate disposal.	
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	Water	Pitting and	Water Use	
			trenching phase-	1. Develop a sustainable water	
			(construction and	supply management plan to	
			operation phase)	minimise the impact to natural	
				systems by managing water use,	
				avoiding depletion of aquifers	
				and minimising impacts to	
				water users.	
				2. Water must be reused, recycled	
				or treated where possible.	

Water Quality3. The quality and quantity of effluent streams discharged to the environment including stormwater should be managed and treated to meet applicable effluent discharge guidelines.4. Discharge to surface water should not result in contaminant concentrations in excess of local ambient water quality criteria outside a scientifically established mixing zone.5. Efficient oil and grease traps or sumps should be installed and maintained at refueling facilities, workshops, fuel storage depots, and containment areas and spill kits should be available with	
emergency response plans.	
Stormwater	
<ul> <li>6. The site must be managed in order to prevent pollution of drains, downstream watercourses or groundwater, due to suspended solids and silt or chemical pollutants.</li> <li>7. Silt fences should be used to prevent any soil entering the stormwater drains.</li> <li>8. Temperary out off drains and</li> </ul>	
8. Temporary cut off drains and berms may be required to	

<ul> <li>capture stormwater and promote inflittation.</li> <li>9. Promote awater saving mind set with construction/Mining workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.</li> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater from the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the stormwater function of the site. Untreated runoff from the stormwater function of the storm of</li></ul>			
<ul> <li>9. Promote a water saving mind set with construction/Mining workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.</li> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site, i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of othe areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>		capture stormwater and	
<ul> <li>with construction/Mining workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.</li> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>		promote infiltration.	
<ul> <li>workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.</li> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to a avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>		9. Promote a water saving mind set	
ensure less water wastage. 10.Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution. 11.The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase. 12.Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13.There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		with construction/Mining	
<ul> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater frames.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage diffectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the store data and the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>		workers in order to Contractor	
<ul> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater frames.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage diffectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the store data and the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>		ensure less water wastage.	
stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution. 11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase. 12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
<ul> <li>water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>		stored at least 40m from any	
<ul> <li>pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>		e e	
<ul> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to a avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>			
stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase. 12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreater runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		1	
<ul> <li>place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>			
attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.         12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.         13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.         14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		-	
<ul> <li>construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>			
the operation phase. 12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
<ul> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>			
properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
<ul> <li>on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.</li> <li>14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm</li> </ul>			
natural water path ways over         the site. i.e. these materials         must not be placed in         stormwater channels, drainage         lines or rivers.         13. There should be a periodic         checking of the site's drainage         system to ensure that the water         flow is unobstructed.         14. If a batching plant is necessary,         run-off should be managed         effectively         to avoid         contamination of other areas of         the site. Untreated runoff from         the batch plant must not be         allowed to get into the storm			
the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
lines or rivers. 13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		-	
checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		13. There should be a periodic	
system to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		-	
flow is unobstructed. 14. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		5	
run-off should be managed effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		14. If a batching plant is necessary,	
effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
contamination of other areas of the site. Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm			
the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		5	
the batch plant must not be allowed to get into the storm		the site. Untreated runoff from	
allowed to get into the storm			
		-	
		water system or nearby	

streams, rivers or erosion channels or dongas.	
The cut-off trenches and silt fences will be installed where necessary as to control runoff storm water by attenuating it and control the movement of sediment on the premises.	
These structures will be monitored on a regular basis. It is suggested that it be monitored on a weekly basis during the rainy season, and after possible rain events during the dry season.	
If these practices is found to be insufficient for the control of storm water and sedimentation, other alternatives should immediately be investigated and implemented.	
Groundwater resource protection 15.Process solution storage ponds and other impoundments designed to hold non fresh water or non-treated process effluents should be lined and be equipped with sufficient wells to enable monitoring of water levels and quality.	
It is recommended that the following actions be implemented in order to mitigate groundwater contamination:	

<ul> <li>Prevent dirty water runoff from leaving the general mining area;</li> <li>Minimise dirty footprints;</li> <li>Compact the base of dirty areas, like the workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers;</li> <li>A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops;</li> <li>Encough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidential spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A the diel mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as stipulated in the</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>Minimise dirty footprints;</li> <li>Compact the base of dirty areas, like the workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers;</li> <li>A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops;</li> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			• Prevent dirty water runoff from	
<ul> <li>Compact the base of dirty areas, like the workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers;</li> <li>A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops;</li> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			leaving the general mining area;	
<ul> <li>Compact the base of dirty areas, like the workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers;</li> <li>A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops:</li> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty wate rareas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			Minimise dirty footprints;	
the workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers; • A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops; • Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills; • Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities; • Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow; • Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoid layer as well as vegetation thereof; • Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas; • The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations; • A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase. including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as			5 1 /	
storage areas to minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers; • A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops; • Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills; • Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities; • Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow; • Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof; • Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas; • The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations; • A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as			-	
<ul> <li>minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to the underlying aquifers;</li> <li>A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops;</li> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			-	
<ul> <li>water to the underlying aquifers;</li> <li>A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops;</li> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			0	
<ul> <li>A credible company should remove used oil from the workshops;</li> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dan to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>used oil from the workshops;</li> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>should be kept at the site to contain accidental spills;</li> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
accidental spills; • Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities; • Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow; • Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof; • Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas; • The monitoring results must be interpreted annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations; • A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as				
<ul> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			5	
<ul> <li>waste dam to avoid overflow;</li> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			-	
<ul> <li>Rehabilitation must include covering with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			-	
<ul> <li>with a topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
<ul> <li>vegetation thereof;</li> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			8	
<ul> <li>Proper storm water management should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
should be implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas; • The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations; • A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as				
<ul> <li>also be</li> <li>constructed to ensure separation of</li> <li>clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be</li> <li>interpreted annually, and network</li> <li>audited annually as</li> <li>well to ensure compliance with</li> <li>regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should</li> <li>be prepared during the operational</li> <li>phase,</li> <li>including a risk assessment, water</li> <li>resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas; • The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations; • A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as				
<ul> <li>clean water and dirty water areas;</li> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>			-	
<ul> <li>interpreted annually, and network audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>audited annually as well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li> <li>A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as</li> </ul>				
regulations; • A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as			5	
A detailed mine closure plan should be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as			-	
be prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as				
phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as				
including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as				
resource impact prediction etc. as			-	
stipulated in the			resource impact prediction etc. as	
	 		stipulated in the	

DWS Best Practice Guidelines. The	
implementation of the mine closure	
plan, and the	
application for the closure certificate	
can be conducted during the	
decommissioned	
phase.	
phase.	
Sanitation	
16.Adequate sanitary facilities and	
ablutions must be provided for	
construction workers (1 toilet	
per every 15 workers).	
17. The facilities must be regularly	
serviced to reduce the risk of	
surface or groundwater	
8	
pollution.	
Concrete mixing	
18.Concrete contaminated water	
must not enter soil or any	
natural drainage system as this	
disturbs the natural acidity of	
the soil and affects plant	
growth.	
Public areas	
19.Food preparation areas should	
be provided with adequate	
washing facilities and food	
refuse should be stored in	
sealed refuse bins which should	
be removed from site on a	
regular basis.	
20. The Contractor should take	
steps to ensure that littering by	
construction/Mining workers	

			does not occur and persons	
			should be employed on site to	
			collect litter from the site and	
			immediate surroundings,	
			including litter accumulating at	
			fence lines.	
			<b>21.</b> No washing or servicing	
			of vehicles on site.	
Water Use and Quality	Changes to the	Pitting and	Proposed mitigation	
	hydrological	trenching phase-	• Any activities that take place	
	regime of the	(construction and	within 32 meters of a wetland or	
	stream	operation phase)	watercourse or the 1:100 year	
	Stream	operation phase,	flood lines will require	
			authorisation in terms of the	
			relevant regulations of NEMA,	
			however as far as possible	
			infrastructure should be placed	
			outside of wetlands and / or buffer	
			lines.	
			• No stockpiling should take place	
			within a watercourse or the 32m	
			buffer.	
			• All stockpiles must be protected	
			from erosion, stored on flat areas	
			where run-off will be minimised,	
			and be surrounded by bunds	
			• Erosion and sedimentation into	
			channels must be minimised	
			through the effective stabilisation	
			(gabions and Reno mattresses)	
			and the re-vegetation of any	
			disturbed stream banks;	
			<ul> <li>Ensure that erosion management</li> </ul>	
			0	
			and sediment controls are strictly	
			implemented from the beginning of	
L			site clearing activities, particularly	

	as the soils in the study area are
	prone to erosion;
	• All areas should be re-sloped and
	top-soiled where necessary and
	reseeded with indigenous grasses
	to stabilise the loose material;
	• Edge effects such as erosion must
	be strictly monitored and
	managed;
	<b>C</b>
	developed for the study area,
	indicating the drainage lines and
	riparian systems, and their
	relevant buffer zones. It is
	recommended that this sensitivity
	map be considered during all
	phases of the development and
	with special mentioning of the
	planning of infrastructure, in
	order to aid in the conservation of
	and minimise impact on the
	riparian and aquatic habitat and
	resources within the study area;
	Rehabilitation must ensure that
	the wetland structure and
	function are reinstated in such a
	way as to ensure the ongoing
	functionality of the larger wetland
	systems at pre-mining levels.
	• Any areas where bank failure is
	observed, due to the prospecting
	or mining impacts, should be
	immediately repaired;
	• As far as possible the existing road
	network should be utilised,
	minimising the need to develop
	0

	new access routes resulting in an	
	increased impact on the local	
	environment. Should temporary	
	roads or access routes be	
	necessary and unavoidable,	
	proper planning must take place	
	and the site sensitivity plan must	
	be taken into consideration. If	
	additional roads are required, then	
	wherever feasible such roads	
	should be constructed a distance	
	from the more sensitive riparian	
	areas and not directly adjacent	
	thereto. If crossings are required	
	they should cross the systems at	
	right angles, as far as possible to	
	minimise impacts in the receiving	
	environment;	
	• The duration of impacts on the	
	riverine and drainage line systems	
	should be minimised as far as	
	possible by ensuring that the	
	duration of time in which flow	
	alteration and sedimentation will	
	take place is minimised;	
	<ul> <li>Stabilisation of banks by employing</li> </ul>	
	one of the individual techniques	
	below or a combination thereof, is	
	essential, given the inherent	
	susceptibility of the soils to erosion.	
	1 0	
	Such measures include:	
	• Re-sloping of banks to a	
	maximum of a 1:3 slope;	
	• Revegetation of re-profiled	
	slopes;	
	o Temporary stabilisation of	
	slopes using geotextiles; and	

<ul> <li>Installation of gabions and reno-mattresses.</li> <li>To prevent the further erosion of soils, management measures may include berms, soil traps, hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 2% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of pripect and project areas should be ripped and project areas should be and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive construction and</li> </ul> </li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>o To prevent the further erosion of soils, management measures may include berms, soil traps, hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation:</li> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation</li> </ul>		o In	stallation of gabions and	
<ul> <li>soils, management measures may include berms, soil traps, hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be take place</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		re	no-mattresses.	
<ul> <li>may include berms, soil traps, hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 2% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> </ul> </li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities failing outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		o To	prevent the further erosion of	
<ul> <li>hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%.</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes between 10% and should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		so	bils, management measures	
<ul> <li>hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%.</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes between 10% and should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		m	ay include berms, soil traps,	
<ul> <li>water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be alien and invasive vegetation should be paid to alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul> </li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation:</li> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>install erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> </ul> </li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation:</li> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive take place</li> </ul>		-	· ·	
<ul> <li>construction to prevent gully formation:</li> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be inducted and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive regetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>formation:</li> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be pripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>				
10%,         • Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and         • Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;         • Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;         • All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place				
<ul> <li>track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		10	)%,	
<ul> <li>15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		• Be	erms every 20m where the	
<ul> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		tra	ack slopes between 10% and	
<ul> <li>track slope is greater than 15%;</li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		15	5% and	
<ul> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		• Be	erms every 10m where the	
<ul> <li>should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		tra	ack slope is greater than 15%;	
<ul> <li>strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		• Sheet	runoff from access roads	
<ul> <li>sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		shoul	d be slowed down by the	
All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place		strate	gic placement of berms and	
constructionactivitiesfallingoutside of project areas should berippedandrippedandprofiled.Specialattentionshould bepaid to alienandinvasive control within theseareas.Alienand invasive vegetationcontrolshouldtakeplace		sandb	bags;	
outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place		• All so	oils compacted as a result of	
ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place		constr	ruction activities falling	
attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place		outsid	le of project areas should be	
and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place		ripped	and profiled. Special	
areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place		attent	tion should be paid to alien	
control should take place				
control should take place		areas.	. Alien and invasive vegetation	
throughout all construction and			1	
		through	ghout all construction and	

\_

Ī	mnact of	Pitting and	<ul> <li>rehabilitation phases to prevent loss of floral habitat;</li> <li>As far as possible, all rehabilitation activities should occur in the low flow season, during the drier winter months.</li> <li>Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.</li> </ul>
c	mpact of changes to vater quality	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>Proposed mitigation</li> <li>All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks. Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent entry of hydrocarbons into topsoil;</li> <li>All spills, should they occur, should be immediately cleaned up and treated accordingly.</li> <li>Chemicals used for prospecting, vehicle maintenance and construction must be stored safely on site but outside the 32m buffer and surrounded by bunds. Chemical storage containers must be regularly inspected so that any leaks are detected early.</li> <li>Littering and contamination of water sources during prospecting must be prevented by effective site management.</li> </ul>

v a a c (1	Loss of riparian vegetation, aquatic habitat and stream continuity migration corridors)	Pitting and trenching phase- (construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>Emergency plans must be in place in case of spillages especially in the watercourse.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Stockpiles must be located away from river channels.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation (gabions and Reno mattresses) and the revegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.</li> <li>The construction camp and necessary ablution facilities meant for construction workers must be beyond the 32m buffer described previously.</li> <li>Proposed mitigation</li> <li>As far as possible, all rehabilitation activities should occur in the low flow season, during the drier winter months.</li> <li>Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.</li> </ul>	

• The duration of impacts on the
riverine and drainage line systems
should be minimised as far as
possible by ensuring that the
duration of time in which flow
alteration and sedimentation will
take place is minimised;
Rehabilitation must ensure that
riparian structure and function are
reinstated in such a way as to
ensure the ongoing functionality of
the larger riparian systems at pre-
mining levels.
<ul> <li>Stabilisation of banks by employing</li> </ul>
one of the individual techniques
below or a combination thereof, is
essential, given the inherent
susceptibility of the soils to erosion.
Such measures include:
$\circ$ Re-sloping of banks to a
maximum of a 1:3 slope;
• Revegetation of re-profiled
slopes;
• Temporary stabilisation of
slopes using geotextiles; and
• Installation of gabions and
reno-mattresses.
• To prevent the further erosion of
soils, management measures
may include berms, soil traps,
hessian curtains and storm
water diversion away from areas
particularly susceptible to
erosion;
• Install erosion berms during
construction to prevent gully
formation:
ior mation.

\_

Spread of alien       Pitting and         invasive species       Pitting and         trenching phase-(construction and operation phase)       • Proliferation of alien and invasive species should be         issue a slope of less than 2%,       • Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,         • Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and       • Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;         Proposed mitigation       • Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some alien and invasive species within the study area at present. These species should be eradicated and controlled to prevent further spread beyond the study area;         • It is suggested that an alien plant removal program be initialised within the study area in order to help reinstate more natural
<ul> <li>Alien plant seed dispersal within the top layers of the soil within footprint areas, that will have an impact on future rehabilitation, has to be controlled;</li> <li>Care should be taken with the choice of herbicide to ensure that no additional impact and loss of</li> </ul>

			<ul> <li>indigenous plant species occurs due to the herbicide used;</li> <li>Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species;</li> <li>No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive drainage lines and riparian areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.</li> <li>All alien vegetation in the riparian zone should be removed upon completion of prospecting activities and reseeded with indigenous grasses as specified by a suitably qualified specialist (ecologist);</li> </ul>
Specialist (Mpho	Destruction of	(construction and	Supervision by an ecologist to
Ramalivhana) mitigation	protected plant	operation phase)	ensure success of the rescue
measures:	species		operation
			Place drilling holes away from any
Vegetation Clearing for the prospecting purpose			red listed and/or protected plant species
			• Use already available farm roads to
			avoid trampling red listed plant
			species
	Removal of the	(construction and	Due to the sensitivity of the areas it
	natural	operation phase)	is advised that areas designated for
	vegetation		vegetation clearing should be
			identified and visibly marked off
			and also approved as part of final
			drilling map

\_

erosi incre loads	eased soil ion, ease in silt s and nentation	(construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>Contract employees must be educated about the value of wild animals and the importance of their conservation.</li> <li>The ECO must conduct regular site inspections of removing any snares or traps that have been erected.</li> <li>Employees and contractors should be made aware of the presence of, and rules regarding, flora and fauna through suitable induction training and on-site signage.</li> <li>Ensure that the colours used to paint the buildings including the roof are blending to the environment</li> <li>Following prospecting, rehabilitation of disturbed areas is required</li> <li>Avoid areas with sensitive soils, steep slopes during rain or windy season.</li> <li>Ensure that roads are not paved but well maintained (as gravel) to reduce the speed of water by promoting infiltration.</li> </ul>	
and	blishment spread of ared weeds	(construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>promoting infiltration.</li> <li>The best mitigation measure for alien and invasive species is the early detection and eradication of these species which will be ensured</li> </ul>	

Specialist (Mpho Ramalivhana) mitigation measures: Waste generation	Pollution due to oil and fuel spills, erosion, and ablution facilities.	(construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>with the use of a monitoring programme.</li> <li>An alien invasive management programme should be developed and implemented in order to control alien invasive species</li> <li>Proper ablution facilities on site must be provided.</li> <li>Constant rehabilitation of erosion problems.</li> <li>Proper storage facilities of construction materials.</li> <li>Waste management is very important. Proper storage and removal strategy must be in place.</li> <li>Proper Standard Operating Procedures in place regulating refuelling and other potential polluting activities.</li> <li>Must have rehabilitation strategy as part of EMP such as a clean-up plan/strategy if spills occur and proper facilities (ablution) to ensure no sewerage spills into drainage lines and streams.</li> </ul>
Specialist (Mpho	Prospecting on	(construction and	Prospecting across wetlands/rivers
Ramalivhana) mitigation	wetlands/along	operation phase)	should not take place.
measures:	wetlands		• Ensure that prospecting activities
			are carefully monitored to limit
Wetland destruction			unnecessary impacts to wetlands/riparian areas

(particularly in-stream habitat) and
should be approved by WUL.
• Do not lower the original stream
bed / profile of the wetland/river as
this may result in scouring in an
upstream direction and further
alteration of bed conditions.
Ensure that coarse immovable
material including boulders and
other rock in river channels is not
removed to ensure continued
stability and functioning of the river
systems. River sediments should
not be permanently removed from
the system in any case.

### IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

(A description of impact management actions, identifying the manner in which the impact management objectives and outcomes contemplated in paragraphs (c) and (d) will be achieved).

<b>ACTIVITY</b> Whether listed or not	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR	COMPLIANCE WITH
listed.			IMPLEMENTATION	STANDARDS
(E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles,	(e.g. dust, noise, drainage		Describe the time period	
<b>▲</b>	surface	(e.g. noise control measures, storm-water	when the measures in	(A description of how
Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply	disturbance, fly rock,	control, dust control, rehabilitation, design measures, blasting controls,	the environmental	each of the recommendations in
	surface water contamination,	· · ·	management programme	2.11.6 read with 2.12 and 2.15.2 herein will

ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etcetcetc.).		E.g. • Modify through alternative method. • Control through noise control • Control through management and monitoring Remedy through rehabilitation	must be implemented Measures must be implemented when required. With regard to Rehabilitation specifically this must take place at the earliest opportunityWith regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state either: Upon cessation of the individual activity or. Upon the cessation of mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond Mining as the case may be.	comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices that have been identified by Competent Authorities)
Clearance of vegetation	Loss or fragmentation of habitats	<ul> <li>Existing vegetation <ol> <li>Vegetation removal must be limited to the Mining site.</li> <li>Vegetation to be removed as it becomes necessary rather than removal of all vegetation throughout the site in one step.</li> <li>No vegetation to be used for firewood.</li> <li>Exotic and invasive plant species should not be allowed to establish, if the development is approved.</li> </ol> </li> </ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

<ul> <li><b>Rehabilitation</b></li> <li>5. All damaged areas shall be rehabilitated upon completion of the contract.</li> <li>6. Re-vegetation of the disturbed site is aimed at approximating as near as possible the natural vegetative conditions prevailing prior to construction.</li> <li>7. All natural areas impacted during construction/Mining must be</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>rehabilitated with locally indigenous grasses typical of the representative botanical unit.</li> <li>8. Rehabilitation must take place in a phased approach as soon as possible.</li> <li>9. Rehabilitation process must make use of species indigenous to the area. Seeds from surrounding seed banks can be used for re-seeding.</li> <li>10.Rehabilitation must be executed in such a manner that surface run-off will not cause erosion of disturbed areas.</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>11.Planting of indigenous tree species in areas not to be cultivated or built on must be encouraged.</li> <li>Demarcation of Mining area</li> <li>12.All plants not interfering with Mining</li> </ul>	
operations shall be left undisturbed clearly marked and indicated on the site plan. 13.The Mining area must be well demarcated and no construction	

activities must be allowed outside of	
this demarcated footprint.	
14. Vegetation removal must be phased in	
order to reduce impact of	
construction/Mining.	
15. Site office and laydown areas must be	
clearly demarcated and no	
encroachment must occur beyond	
demarcated areas.	
16.Strict and regular auditing of the	
Mining process to ensure containment	
of the Mining and laydown areas.	
17. Soils must be kept free of	
petrochemical solutions that may be	
kept on site during	
construction/Mining. Spillage can	
result in a loss of soil functionality	
thus limiting the re-establishment of	
flora.	
nora.	
Utilisation of resources	
18.Gathering of firewood, fruit, muti	
plants, or any other natural material	
onsite or in areas adjacent to the site	
is prohibited unless with prior	
approval of the ECO.	
approval of the ECO.	
Exotic vegetation	
19. Alien vegetation on the site will need to	
be controlled.	
20. The Contractor should be responsible	
-	
for implementing a programme of weed	
control (particularly in areas where	
soil has been disturbed); and grassing	
of any remaining stockpiles to prevent	
weed invasion.	

	1			
		21.The spread of exotic species occurring		
		throughout the site should be		
		controlled.		
		Herbicides		
		22.Herbicide use shall only be allowed		
		according to contract specifications.		
		The application shall be according to		
		set specifications and under		
		supervision of a qualified technician.		
		The possibility of leaching into the		
		surrounding environment shall be		
		properly investigated and only		
		environmentally friendly herbicides		
		shall be used.		
		23.The use of pesticides and herbicides		
		on the site must be discouraged as		
		these impact on important pollinator		
		species of indigenous vegetation.		
		Fauna		
		24.Rehabilitation to be undertaken as		
		soon as possible after Mining has been		
		completed.		
		25.No trapping or snaring to fauna on the		
		construction/Mining site should be		
		allowed.		
		26.No faunal species must be disturbed,		
		trapped, hunted or killed by		
		maintenance staff during any routine		
		maintenance at the development.		
Mining of Diamonds	Loss of topsoil	1. The Contractor should, prior to the	Duration of operation	The implementation of
(Alluvial) and Diamonds		commencement of earthworks		the recommended
(General) – excavations		determine the average depth of topsoil,		mitigation measures will
		and agree on this with the ECO. The		result in the
		full depth of topsoil should be stripped		minimisation of impacts
		from areas affected by		to acceptable standards,

<ul> <li>activities prior to the commencement of major earthworks. This shoul include the building footprints working areas and storage areas Topsoil must be reused where possible to rehabilitate disturbed areas.</li> <li>2. Care must be taken not to mix topso and subsoil during stripping.</li> <li>3. The topsoil must be conserved on sit in and around the pit/trench area.</li> <li>4. Subsoil and overburden in the Minin area should be stockpiled separately t be returned for backfilling in the correct soil horizon order.</li> <li>5. If stockpiles are exposed to wind conditions or heavy rain, they shoul be covered either by vegetation or geofabric, depending on the duratio of the project. Stockpiles may furthe be protected by the construction the bases.</li> <li>6. Stockpiles should be kept clear or weeds and alien vegetation growth be regular weeding.</li> <li>7. Where contamination of soil i expected, analysis must be done prior to disposal of soil to determine th appropriate disposal route. Proof for an approved waste disposal slie where contaminated soils are dumped if an when a spillage/leakage occurs shoul be attained and given to the project manager.</li> </ul>	and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.
---	---

	<ul> <li>Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for Mining purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below.</li> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of each area.</li> <li>Record the date of topsoil stripping.</li> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled.</li> <li>Record the date of cessation Mining activities at the particular site.</li> <li>Photograph the area on cessation of Mining activities.</li> <li>Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil.</li> <li>Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress</li> </ul>		
Erosion	<ul> <li>of restoration over time.</li> <li>1. An effective system of run-off control should be implemented, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.</li> <li>2. Periodical site inspection should be included in environmental performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the run-off control system and specifically records the occurrence of any erosion on site or downstream.</li> </ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

3. Wind screening and stormwater	
control should be undertaken to	
prevent soil loss from the site.	
4. The use of silt fences and sand bags	
must be implemented in areas that are	
susceptible to erosion.	
5. Other erosion control measures that	
can be implemented are as follows:	
$\circ$ Brush packing with cleared	
vegetation	
• Mulch or chip packing	
<ul> <li>Planting of vegetation</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Hydroseeding/hand sowing</li> </ul>	
6. Sensitive areas need to be identified	
prior to construction/Mining so that	
the necessary precautions can be	
implemented.	
7. All erosion control mechanisms need	
to be regularly maintained.	
8. Seeding of topsoil and subsoil	
stockpiles to prevent wind and water	
erosion of soil surfaces.	
<ol><li>Retention of vegetation where possible to avoid soil erosion.</li></ol>	
10. Vegetation clearance should be phased	
to ensure that the minimum area of	
soil is exposed to potential erosion at	
any one time.	
11.Re-vegetation of disturbed surfaces	
should occur immediately after	
construction/Mining activities are	
completed. This should be done	
through seeding with indigenous	
grasses.	
12.No impediment to the natural water	
flow other than approved erosion	
control works is permitted.	

	13.To prevent stormwater damage, the		
	increase in stormwater run-off		
	resulting from construction/Mining		
	activities must be estimated and the		
	drainage system assessed accordingly.		
	A drainage plan must be submitted to		
	the Engineer for approval and must		
	include the location and design criteria		
	8		
	of any temporary stream crossings.		
	14. Stockpiles not used in three (3)		
	months after stripping must be		
	seeded/backfilled to prevent dust and		
	erosion.		
Air Pollution	Dust control	Duration of operation	The implementation of
	14. Wheel washing and damping down of		the recommended
	un-surfaced and un-vegetated areas.		mitigation measures will
	15.Retention of vegetation where possible		result in the
	will reduce dust travel.		minimisation of impacts
	16.Clearing activities must only be done		to acceptable standards,
	during agreed working times and		thereby ensuring
	permitting weather conditions to avoid		compliance with NEMA
	drifting of sand and dust into		and Duty of Care as
	neighbouring areas.		prescribed by NEMA.
	17.Damping down of all exposed soil		
	surfaces with a water bowser or		
	sprinklers when necessary to reduce		
	dust.		
	18. The Contractor shall be responsible for		
	dust control on site to ensure no		
	nuisance is caused to the		
	neighbouring communities.		
	19.A speed limit of 30km/h must not be		
	exceeded on site.		
	20.Any complaints or claims emanating		
	from the lack of dust control shall be		
	attended to immediately by the		
	Contractor.		

	21.Any dirt roads that are utilised by the workers must be regularly maintained to ensure that dust levels are controlled.		
	<ul> <li>Odour control</li> <li>22.Regular servicing of vehicles in order to limit gaseous emissions.</li> <li>23.Regular servicing of onsite toilets to avoid potential odours.</li> </ul>		
	<b>Rehabilitation</b> 24.The Contractor should commence rehabilitation of exposed soil surfaces as soon as practical after completion of earthworks.		
	<ul> <li>Fire prevention</li> <li>25. No open fires shall be allowed on site under any circumstance. All cooking shall be done in demarcated areas that are safe and cannot cause runaway fires.</li> <li>26. The Contractor shall have operational fire-fighting equipment available on site at all times. The level of firefighting equipment must be assessed and evaluated through a typical risk assessment process.</li> </ul>		
Noise	assessment process.1. The Mining activities must aim to adhere to the relevant noise regulations and limit noise to within standard working hours in order to reduce disturbance of dwellings in close proximity to the development.2. Pans, power plants, crushers, workshops and other noisy fixed	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA

facilities should be located well away	and Duty of Care as
from noise sensitive areas. Once the	prescribed by NEMA.
proposed final layouts are made	
available by the Contractor(s), the sites	
must be evaluated in detail and	
specific measures designed in to the	
system.	
3. Truck traffic should be routed away	
from noise sensitive areas, where	
possible.	
4. Noise levels must be kept within	
acceptable limits.	
5. Noisy operations should be combined	
so that they occur where possible at	
the same time.	
6. Mine workers to wear necessary ear	
protection gear.	
7. Noisy activities to take place during	
allocated hours.	
8. Noise from labourers must be	
controlled.	
9. Noise suppression measures must be	
applied to all equipment. Equipment	
must be kept in good working order	
and where appropriate fitted with	
silencers which are kept in good	
working order. Should the vehicles or	
equipment not be in good working	
order, the Contractor may be	
instructed to remove the offending	
vehicle or machinery from the site.	
10. The Contractor must take measures to	
discourage labourers from loitering in	
the area and causing noise	
disturbance. Where possible labour	
shall be transported to and from the	
site by the Contractor or his Sub-	

Impact on	Contractors by the Contractors own transport. 11.Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants. 12.Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a machine. 1. Any finds must be reported to the	Duration of operation	The implementation of
potential cultural and heritage artefacts	<ul> <li>nearest National Monuments office to comply with the National Heritage Resources Act (Act No 25 of 1999) and to DEA.</li> <li>2. Local museums as well as the South African Heritage Resource Agency (SAHRA) should be informed if any artefacts are uncovered in the affected area.</li> <li>3. The Contractor must ensure that his workforce is aware of the necessity of reporting any possible historical or archaeological finds to the ECO so that appropriate action can be taken.</li> <li>4. Any discovered artefacts shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from the SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage sites or if any heritage sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>		the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

Management and Mitingtics Management	-
Management and Mitigation Measures	
according to the Phase 1 HIA conducted by	
<u>J.A. van Schalkwyk</u>	
12. A person or entity, e.g. the	
Environmental Control Officer, must be	
tasked to take responsibility for the	
heritage sites and must be held	
accountable for any damage.	
• •	
13. Known sites must be located and	
isolated, e.g. by fencing them off. All	
construction workers must be informed	
that these are no-go areas, unless	
accompanied by the individual or persons	
representing the Environmental Control	
Officer as identified above.	
14. In areas where the vegetation is	
threatening the heritage sites, e.g. growing	
trees pushing walls over, it should be	
removed, but only after permission for the	
methods proposed has been granted by	
SAHRA. A heritage official should be part	
of the team executing these measures.	
15. Known sites should be clearly marked	
in order that they can be avoided during	
construction activities.	
16. The contractors and workers should	
be notified that archaeological sites might	
be exposed during the construction	
activities.	
17. Should any heritage artefacts be	
exposed during excavation, work on the	
exposed during excavation, work on the	

area where the artefacts were discovered,	
shall cease immediately and the	
Environmental Control Officer shall be	
notified as soon as possible;	
18. All discoveries shall be reported	
immediately to a heritage practitioner so	
that an investigation and evaluation of the	
finds can be made. Acting upon advice	
from these specialists, the Environmental	
Control Officer will advise the necessary	
actions to be taken;	
19. Under no circumstances shall any	
artefacts be removed, destroyed or	
interfered with by anyone on the site; and	
20. Contractors and workers shall be	
advised of the penalties associated with	
the unlawful removal of cultural,	
historical, archaeological or	
palaeontological artefacts, as set out in	
the National Heritage Resources Act (Act	
No. 25 of 1999), Section 51. (1).	
21. Specialist findings mitigation	
measures	
Chance finds: Stone Age material	
(5) No further action required: This is	
applicable only where sites or features	
have been rated to be of such low	
significance that it does not warrant	
further documentation, as it is viewed to	
be fully documented after inclusion in this	
report.	
• Site 7.3.1: Historic house	

(1) Avoidance/Preserve: This is viewed to	
be the primary form of mitigation and	
applies where any type of development	
occurs within a formally protected or	
significant or sensitive heritage context	
and is likely to have a high negative	
impact; or, alternatively;	
(2) Archaeological investigation: This is	
appropriate where development occurs in	
a context of heritage significance and	
where the impact is such that it can be	
mitigated. Mitigation is to excavate the site	
by archaeological techniques, document	
the site (map and photograph) and analyse	
the recovered material to acceptable	
standards.	
22. <u>Conditions for inclusion in the</u>	
environmental authorisation according to	
the Phase 1 HIA specialist:	
• If the identified structure is to be	
demolished, it must be fully documented –	
mapped, photographed and described –	
beforehand.	
The Palaeontological Sensitivity Map	
(SAHRIS) indicate that the study area has	
moderate sensitivity of fossil remains to be	
found and therefore a desktop	
palaeontological study of the site is	
required.	
• Should archaeological sites or graves be	
exposed in other areas during	
construction work, it must immediately be	

	reported to a heritage practitioner so that		
	an investigation and evaluation of the		
	finds can be made		
Waste Management	<ul> <li>Litter management <ol> <li>Refuse bins must be placed at strategic positions to ensure that litter does not accumulate within the construction/Mining site.</li> <li>The Contractor shall supply waste collection bins where such is not available and all solid waste collected shall be disposed of at registered/licensed landfill.</li> <li>Good housekeeping practices should be implemented to regularly maintain the litter and rubble situation on the construction/Mining site.</li> <li>If possible and feasible, all waste generated on site must be separated into glass, plastic, paper, metal and wood and recycled. An independent contractor can be appointed to conduct this recycling.</li> <li>Littering by the employees of the Contractor shall not be allowed under any circumstances. The ECO shall monitor the neatness of the work sites as well as the Contractor campsite.</li> <li>Skip waste containers should be kept covered and arrangements made for them to be collected regularly.</li> <li>All waste must be removed from the site and transported to a landfill site promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.</li> </ol></li></ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

<ul> <li>8. Where a registered waste site is not available close to the construction/Mining site, the Contractor shall provide a method statement with regard to waste management.</li> <li>9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.</li> <li>10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.</li> <li>11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.</li> </ul>	
availableclosetotheconstruction/Miningsite,theContractorshallprovidea methodstatementwithregardtowastemanagement.9.Acertificateof9.AcertificateofdisposalshallbeobtainedbytheContractor and keptonfile, if relevant.10.Under nocircumstances11.All wasteberemoved promptly toensurethat it does not attract verminfilefile	
<ul> <li>construction/Mining site, the Contractor shall provide a method statement with regard to waste management.</li> <li>9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.</li> <li>10.Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.</li> <li>11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin</li> </ul>	
Contractor shall provide a method statement with regard to waste management. 9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant. 10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site. 11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
statement with regard to waste management.         9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.         10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.         11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
<ul> <li>management.</li> <li>9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.</li> <li>10.Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.</li> <li>11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>management.</li> <li>9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.</li> <li>10.Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.</li> <li>11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.</li> <li>10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.</li> <li>11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin</li> </ul>	
obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.10.Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
on file, if relevant. 10.Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site. 11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
10.Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site. 11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
waste be burnt on site. 11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
waste be burnt on site. 11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
11.All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin	
ensure that it does not attract vermin	
or produce odours.	
Hazardous waste	
12. All waste hazardous materials must be	
carefully stored as advised by the ECO,	
and then disposed of offsite at a	
licensed landfill site, where practical.	
Incineration may be used where	
relevant.	
13.Contaminants to be stored safely to	
avoid spillage.	
14. Machinery must be properly	
maintained to keep oil leaks in check.	
15.All necessary precaution measures	
shall be taken to prevent soil or	
surface water pollution from	
hazardous materials used during	
construction/Mining and any spills	
shall immediately be cleaned up and	
all affected areas rehabilitated.	
Sanitation	
16.The Contractor shall install mobile	
chemical toilets on the site.	

17.Staff shall be sensitised to the fact that	
they should use these facilities at all	
times. No indiscriminate sanitary	
activities on site shall be allowed.	
18.Toilets shall be serviced regularly and	
the ECO shall inspect toilets regularly.	
19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m	
or above the 1:100 year flood line from	
any natural or manmade water bodies	
or drainage lines or alternatively	
located in a place approved of by the	
Engineer.	
20.Under no circumstances may open	
areas, neighbours fences or the	
surrounding bush be used as a toilet	
facility.	
21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets	
is forbidden, but rather toilets	
connected to the sewage treatment	
plant.	
22.Potable water must be provided for all	
construction staff.	
Remedial actions	
23.Depending on the nature and extent of	
the spill, contaminated soil must be	
either excavated or treated on-site.	
24. Excavation of contaminated soil must	
involve careful removal of soil using	
appropriate tools/machinery to	
storage containers until treated or	
disposed of at a licensed hazardous	
landfill site.	
25.The ECO must determine the precise	
method of treatment for polluted soil.	
This could involve the application of	
soil absorbent materials as well as oil-	

		digestive powders to the contaminated	
		soil.	
		26.If a spill occurs on an impermeable	
		surface such as cement or concrete,	
		the surface spill must be contained	
		using oil absorbent material.	
		27.If necessary, oil absorbent sheets or	
		pads must be attached to leaky	
		machinery or infrastructure.	
		28. Materials used for the remediation of	
		petrochemical spills must be used	
		according to product specifications	
		and guidance for use.	
		29.Contaminated remediation materials	
		must be carefully removed from the	
		area of the spill so as to prevent further	
		release of petrochemicals to the	
		environment, and stored in adequate	
		containers until appropriate disposal.	
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	Water Use	
	_	1. Develop a sustainable water supply	
		management plan to minimise the impact	
		to natural systems by managing water	
		use, avoiding depletion of aquifers and	
		minimising impacts to water users.	
		2) Water must be reused, recycled or treated	
		where possible.	
		_	
		Water Quality	
		3) The quality and quantity of effluent	
		streams discharged to the environment	
		including stormwater should be managed	
		and treated to meet applicable effluent	
		discharge guidelines.	
		4) Discharge to surface water should not	
		result in contaminant concentrations in	
		excess of local ambient water quality	

<ul> <li>criteria outside a scientifically established mixing zone.</li> <li>5) Efficient oil and grease traps or sumps should be installed and maintained at refueling facilities, workshops, fuel storage depots, and containment areas and spill kits should be available with emergency response plans.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Stormwater</li> <li>6) The site must be managed in order to prevent pollution of drains, downstream watercourses or groundwater, due to suspended solids and silt or chemical pollutants.</li> </ul>
7) Silt fences should be used to prevent any soil entering the stormwater drains.
8) Temporary cut off drains and berms may be required to capture stormwater and promote infiltration.
9) Promote a water saving mind set with construction/Mining workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.
10)New stormwater construction must be developed strictly according to specifications from engineers in order to ensure efficiency.
11)Hazardous substances must be stored at least 20m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.
12)The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the
construction phase as well as the operation phase.
13)Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to

obstruct natural water path ways over the	
site. i.e. these materials must not be	
placed in stormwater channels, drainage	
lines or rivers.	
14)There should be a periodic checking of the	
site's drainage system to ensure that the	
water flow is unobstructed.	
15)If a batching plant is necessary, run-off	
should be managed effectively to avoid	
contamination of other areas of the site.	
Untreated runoff from the batch plant	
must not be allowed to get into the storm	
water system or nearby streams, rivers or	
erosion channels or dongas.	
Groundwater resource protection	
16)Process solution storage ponds and other	
impoundments designed to hold non fresh	
water or un-treated process effluents	
should be lined and be equipped with	
sufficient wells to enable monitoring of	
water levels and quality.	
It is recommended that the following actions	
be implemented in order to mitigate	
groundwater contamination:	
• Prevent dirty water runoff from leaving the	
general mining area;	
Minimise dirty footprints;	
• Compact the base of dirty areas, like the	
workshops and oil and diesel storage areas to	
minimise infiltration of poor-quality water to	
the underlying aquifers;	
• A credible company should remove used oil	
from the workshops;	
1	
• Enough supply of absorbent fibre should be	
kept at the site to contain accidental spills;	

<ul> <li>Contain dirty water in return water dams or pollution control facilities;</li> <li>Ensure adequate maintenance of waste dam</li> </ul>	
to avoid overflow; • Rehabilitation must include covering with a	
<ul><li>topsoil layer as well as vegetation thereof;</li><li>Proper storm water management should be</li></ul>	
implemented. Berms should also be constructed to ensure separation of clean water and dirty water areas;	
• The monitoring results must be interpreted annually, and network audited annually as	
<ul><li>well to ensure compliance with regulations;</li><li>A detailed mine closure plan should be</li></ul>	
prepared during the operational phase, including a risk assessment, water resource impact prediction etc. as stipulated in the	
DWS Best Practice Guidelines. The implementation of the mine closure plan, and the application for the closure certificate can be conducted during the decommissioned phase.	
<ul> <li>Sanitation</li> <li>17) Adequate sanitary facilities and ablutions must be provided for construction workers (1 toilet per every 15 workers).</li> <li>18) The facilities must be regularly serviced to reduce the risk of surface or groundwater pollution.</li> </ul>	
<b>Concrete mixing</b> 19)Concrete contaminated water must not	
enter soil or any natural drainage system as this disturbs the natural acidity of the	
soil and affects plant growth.	

Water Use and Quality	Changes to the hydrological regime of the stream	<ul> <li>Public areas</li> <li>20) Food preparation areas should be provided with adequate washing facilities and food refuse should be stored in sealed refuse bins which should be removed from site on a regular basis.</li> <li>21) The Contractor should take steps to ensure that littering by construction workers does not occur and persons should be employed on site to collect litter from the site and immediate surroundings, including litter accumulating at fence lines.</li> <li>22) No washing or servicing of vehicles on site.</li> <li>Proposed mitigation <ul> <li>Any activities that take place within 32 meters of a wetland or watercourse or the 1:100 year flood lines will require authorisation in terms of the relevant regulations of NEMA, however as far as possible infrastructure should be placed outside of wetlands and / or buffer lines.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the 32m buffer.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		watercourse or the 32m buffer.	

implemented from the beginning of site
clearing activities, particularly as the
soils in the study area are prone to
erosion;
• All areas should be re-sloped and top-
soiled where necessary and reseeded
with indigenous grasses to stabilise the
loose material;
• Edge effects such as erosion must be
strictly monitored and managed;
Sensitivity maps have been developed for
the study area, indicating the drainage
lines and riparian systems, and their
relevant buffer zones. It is recommended
that this sensitivity map be considered
during all phases of the development and
with special mentioning of the planning
of infrastructure, in order to aid in the
conservation of and minimise impact on
the riparian and aquatic habitat and
resources within the study area;
• Rehabilitation must ensure that the
wetland structure and function are
reinstated in such a way as to ensure the
ongoing functionality of the larger
wetland systems at pre-mining levels.
• Any areas where bank failure is
observed, due to the prospecting or
mining impacts, should be immediately
repaired;
• As far as possible the existing road
network should be utilised, minimising
the need to develop new access routes
resulting in an increased impact on the
local environment. Should temporary
roads or access routes be necessary and

unavoidable, proper planning must take place and the site sensitivity plan must be taken into consideration. If additional roads are required, then wherever feasible such roads should be	
constructed a distance from the more sensitive riparian areas and not directly adjacent thereto. If crossings are required they should cross the systems at right angles, as far as possible to minimise impacts in the receiving environment;	
<ul> <li>The duration of impacts on the riverine and drainage line systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised;</li> <li>Stabilization of banks by employing one of</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Stabilisation of banks by employing one of the individual techniques below or a combination thereof, is essential, given the inherent susceptibility of the soils to erosion. Such measures include:         <ul> <li>Re-sloping of banks to a maximum of a 1:3 slope;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Revegetation of re-profiled slopes;</li> <li>Temporary stabilisation of slopes using geotextiles; and</li> <li>Installation of gabions and reno- mattresses.</li> <li>To prevent the further erosion of soils,</li> </ul>	
management measures may include berms, soil traps, hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;	

	<ul> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation: <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> </ul> </li> <li>Sheet runoff from access roads should be slowed down by the strategic placement of berms and sandbags;</li> <li>All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of project areas should be ripped and profiled. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all construction and rehabilitation phases to prevent loss of floral habitat;</li> <li>As far as possible, all rehabilitation activities should occur in the low flow season, during the drier winter months.</li> <li>Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.</li> </ul>	
Impact of	Proposed mitigation	
changes to	• All vehicles must be regularly	
water quality	inspected for leaks. Re-fuelling must	
	take place on a sealed surface area to	

	construction workers must be beyond	
	the 32m buffer described previously.	
Loss of riparia	an <b>Proposed mitigation</b>	
vegetation,	• As far as possible, all rehabilitation	
aquatic habita		
and stream	season, during the drier winter months.	
continuity	Trenches and deep excavations should not	
(migration	be left open for extended periods of time as	
corridors)	fauna may fall in and become trapped in	
001114010)	them. Trenches which are exposed should	
	contain soil ramps allowing fauna to	
	escape the trench.	
	• The duration of impacts on the riverine	
	and drainage line systems should be	
	minimised as far as possible by ensuring	
	that the duration of time in which flow	
	alteration and sedimentation will take	
	place is minimised;	
	• Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian	
	structure and function are reinstated in	
	such a way as to ensure the ongoing	
	functionality of the larger riparian systems	
	at pre-mining levels.	
	• Stabilisation of banks by employing one of	
	the individual techniques below or a	
	combination thereof, is essential, given the	
	inherent susceptibility of the soils to	
	erosion. Such measures include:	
	• Re-sloping of banks to a maximum of	
	a 1:3 slope;	
	<ul> <li>Revegetation of re-profiled slopes;</li> </ul>	
	• Temporary stabilisation of slopes	
	using geotextiles; and	
	• Installation of gabions and reno-	
	mattresses.	

Spread of alien invasive species	<ul> <li>To prevent the further erosion of soils, management measures may include berms, soil traps, hessian curtains and storm water diversion away from areas particularly susceptible to erosion;</li> <li>Install erosion berms during construction to prevent gully formation:         <ul> <li>Berms every 50m should be installed where any disturbed soils have a slope of less than 2%,</li> <li>Berms every 25m where the track slopes between 2% and 10%,</li> <li>Berms every 20m where the track slopes between 10% and 15% and</li> <li>Berms every 10m where the track slope is greater than 15%;</li> </ul> </li> <li>Proposed mitigation         <ul> <li>Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some alien and invasive species within the study area;</li> <li>It is suggested that an alien plant removal program be initialised within the study area;</li> <li>It is suggested that an alien plant removal program be initialised within the study area in order to help reinstate more natural hydrological and ecological functions to within the project site;</li> <li>Alien plant seed dispersal within the top layers of the soil within footprint areas, that will have an impact on future rehabilitation has to be controlled:</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	<ul><li>layers of the soil within footprint areas, that will have an impact on future rehabilitation, has to be controlled;</li><li>Care should be taken with the choice of</li></ul>	
	herbicide to ensure that no additional	

Ramalivhana) mitigation	Destruction of protected plant species	impact and loss of indigenous plant species occurs due to the herbicide used;• Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species;• No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive drainage lines and riparian areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.• All alien vegetation in the riparian zone 		
	Removal of the natural vegetation Disturbance to	(construction and operation phase) (construction and	<ul> <li>trampling red listed plant species</li> <li>Due to the sensitivity of the areas it is advised that areas designated for vegetation clearing should be identified and visibly marked off and also approved as part of final drilling map</li> <li>Vegetation clearing areas should be kept to a minimum and restricted to the proposed drilling sites.</li> <li>Exposed areas should be rehabilitated with indigenous plants to the project area as soon as construction is finished.</li> <li>Do not disturb nests, breeding sites or</li> </ul>	

		capture snakes unless directly threatening
		the safety of employees.
		• Dogs or other pets are not allowed to the
		worksite as they are threats to the natural
		wild animal
		• A low speed limit should be enforced on site
		to reduce wild animal-vehicle collisions
		No animals should be intentionally killed or
		destroyed and poaching and hunting should
		not be permitted on the site.
		• Severe contractual fines must be imposed
		and immediate dismissal on any contract
		employee who is found attempting to snare
		or otherwise harms remaining faunal
		species.
		<ul> <li>Hunting weapons are prohibited on site.</li> </ul>
		• Contract employees must be educated
		about the value of wild animals and the
		importance of their conservation.
		• The ECO must conduct regular site
		inspections of removing any snares or traps
		that have been erected.
		• Employees and contractors should be made
		aware of the presence of, and rules
		regarding, flora and fauna through suitable
		induction training and on-site signage.
		• Ensure that the colours used to paint the
		buildings including the roof are blending to
		the environment
Increased soil	(construction and	Following prospecting, rehabilitation of
erosion,	operation phase)	disturbed areas is required
		-

	increase in silt loads and sedimentation Establishment	(construction and	<ul> <li>Avoid areas with sensitive soils, steep slopes during rain or windy season.</li> <li>Ensure that roads are not paved but well maintained (as gravel) to reduce the speed of water by promoting infiltration.</li> <li>The best mitigation measure for alien and</li> </ul>
	and spread of declared weeds	operation phase)	<ul> <li>invasive species is the early detection and eradication of these species which will be ensured with the use of a monitoring programme.</li> <li>An alien invasive management programme should be developed and implemented in order to control alien invasive species</li> </ul>
Specialist (Mpho Ramalivhana) mitigation measures: Waste generation	Pollution due to oil and fuel spills, erosion, and ablution facilities.	(construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>Proper ablution facilities on site must be provided.</li> <li>Constant rehabilitation of erosion problems.</li> <li>Proper storage facilities of construction materials.</li> <li>Waste management is very important. Proper storage and removal strategy must be in place.</li> <li>Proper Standard Operating Procedures in place regulating refuelling and other potential polluting activities.</li> <li>Must have rehabilitation strategy as part of EMP such as a clean-up plan/strategy if spills occur and proper facilities (ablution) to ensure no sewerage spills into drainage lines and streams.</li> </ul>

Specialist (Mpho	Prospecting on	(construction and	Prospecting across wetlands/rivers should
Ramalivhana) mitigation	wetlands/along	operation phase)	not take place.
measures:	wetlands		• Ensure that prospecting activities are
			carefully monitored to limit unnecessary
Wetland destruction			impacts to wetlands/riparian areas
			(particularly in-stream habitat) and should
			be approved by WUL.
			• Do not lower the original stream bed /
			profile of the wetland/river as this may
			result in scouring in an upstream direction
			and further alteration of bed conditions.
			• Ensure that coarse immovable material
			including boulders and other rock in river
			channels is not removed to ensure
			continued stability and functioning of the
			river systems. River sediments should not
			be permanently removed from the system in
			any case.

# Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the environmental management programme and reporting thereon, including

- G. MONITORING OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
- H. MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY
- I. RESPONSIBLE PERSONS
- J. TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY and TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
Clearance of vegetation	Loss or fragmentation of habitats	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Mining of Diamonds (Alluvial) and Diamonds (General) – excavations	Loss of topsoil Erosion Air Pollution Noise	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at

	Impact on potential cultural and heritage artefacts			least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Waste management	Pollution	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.

## K. A PROGRAM FOR REPORTING ON COMPLIANCE, TAKING INTO ACCOUNT THE REQUIREMENTS AS BY THE REGULATIONS;

External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the Competent Authority if required.

## L. AN ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN DESCRIBING THE MANNER IN WHICH—

## (i) Manner in which the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work.

**Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** will implement an Environmental Awareness Plan which will include various mechanisms for informing employees of environmental risks resulting from their work, including:

- Induction training for full -time staff and contractors;
- In-house training sessions to be held with relevant employees;
- On the job training regarding environmental issues
- Training and skills development

The above measures will be implemented through an Environmental Communication Strategy to be implemented.

See the attached **appendix 7** for the Awareness plan

# (ii) Manner in which risks will be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.

**Okapi Diamonds (Pty) Ltd** will implement an incident reporting and reporting procedure in order to identify risks timeously and implement actions to avoid or minimise environmental impacts.

### M. SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY (Among others, Confirm that the financial provision will be reviewed annually).

No specific information requirements have been detailed by the Competent Authority.

#### \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*END OF THE REPORT\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*